DocBook XSL Stylesheet Reference Documentation

Norman Walsh

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

DocBook XSL Stylesheet Reference Documentation

Norman Walsh

$Id: reference.dbk 6508 2007-01-18 02:53:06Z xmldoc $
Copyright © 1999, 2006 Norman Walsh

Copyright Statement

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the “Software”), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

Except as contained in this notice, the names of individuals credited with contribution to this software shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from the individuals in question.

Any stylesheet derived from this Software that is publically distributed will be identified with a different name and the version strings in any derived Software will be changed so that no possibility of confusion between the derived package and this Software will exist.

Warranty

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED “AS IS”, WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL NORMAN WALSH OR ANY OTHER CONTRIBUTOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Table of Contents

About this document xxi
I. HTML Parameter Reference 286
I. Admonitions 104
admon.graphics.extension 104
admon.graphics.path 104
admon.graphics 104
admon.textlabel 104
admon.style 2
II. Callouts 107
callout.defaultcolumn 107
callout.graphics.extension 107
callout.graphics.number.limit 107
callout.graphics.path 107
callout.graphics 107
callout.list.table 5
callout.unicode.number.limit 108
callout.unicode.start.character 108
callout.unicode 108
callouts.extension 109
III. EBNF 216
ebnf.table.bgcolor 7
ebnf.table.border 7
ebnf.assignment 216
ebnf.statement.terminator 216
IV. ToC/LoT/Index Generation 110
annotate.toc 9
autotoc.label.separator 110
autotoc.label.in.hyperlink 9
process.source.toc 110
process.empty.source.toc 110
bridgehead.in.toc 118
simplesect.in.toc 119
manual.toc 10
toc.list.type 11
toc.section.depth 117
toc.max.depth 117
generate.toc 110
generate.section.toc.level 119
generate.index 112
index.method 113
index.on.type 114
index.on.role 114
index.prefer.titleabbrev 15
index.term.separator 116
index.number.separator 115
index.range.separator 116
V. Stylesheet Extensions 123
linenumbering.everyNth 123
linenumbering.extension 123
linenumbering.separator 123
linenumbering.width 123
tablecolumns.extension 123
textinsert.extension 124
textdata.default.encoding 124
graphicsize.extension 18

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

graphicsize.use.img.src.path 18
use.extensions 124
VI. Automatic labelling 125
chapter.autolabel 125
appendix.autolabel 125
part.autolabel 126
reference.autolabel 126
preface.autolabel 127
qandadiv.autolabel 150
section.autolabel 127
section.autolabel.max.depth 127
section.label.includes.component.label 128
label.from.part 128
component.label.includes.part.label 128
VII. HTML 286
html.base 24
html.stylesheet.type 24
html.stylesheet 24
css.decoration 24
spacing.paras 25
emphasis.propagates.style 25
para.propagates.style 25
phrase.propagates.style 25
entry.propagates.style 25
html.longdesc 26
html.longdesc.link 26
make.valid.html 26
html.cleanup 27
html.append 27
draft.mode 185
draft.watermark.image 185
generate.id.attributes 28
generate.meta.abstract 28
VIII. XSLT Processing 129
rootid 129
suppress.navigation 29
suppress.header.navigation 29
suppress.footer.navigation 29
header.rule 186
footer.rule 186
id.warnings 30
IX. Meta/*Info and Titlepages 130
inherit.keywords 31
make.single.year.ranges 130
make.year.ranges 130
author.othername.in.middle 130
blurb.on.titlepage.enabled 31
contrib.inline.enabled 32
editedby.enabled 32
othercredit.like.author.enabled 32
generate.legalnotice.link 32
generate.revhistory.link 33
html.head.legalnotice.link.types 33
html.head.legalnotice.link.multiple 34
X. Reference Pages 131
funcsynopsis.decoration 131
funcsynopsis.style 131
funcsynopsis.tabular.threshold 35

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

function.parens 131
refentry.generate.name 131
refentry.generate.title 131
refentry.xref.manvolnum 133
citerefentry.link 36
refentry.separator 36
refclass.suppress 133
XI. Tables 134
default.table.width 134
nominal.table.width 134
table.borders.with.css 38
table.cell.border.style 135
table.cell.border.thickness 135
table.cell.border.color 135
table.frame.border.style 135
table.frame.border.thickness 134
table.frame.border.color 135
default.table.frame 40
html.cellspacing 40
html.cellpadding 40
XII. QAndASet 150
qanda.defaultlabel 150
qanda.inherit.numeration 150
qanda.in.toc 41
qanda.nested.in.toc 41
XIII. Linking 226
target.database.document 142
targets.filename 142
olink.base.uri 138
use.local.olink.style 142
current.docid 137
olink.doctitle 139
olink.debug 139
olink.properties 141
olink.lang.fallback.sequence 140
insert.olink.page.number 137
insert.olink.pdf.frag 138
prefer.internal.olink 141
link.mailto.url 47
ulink.target 48
olink.fragid 48
olink.outline.ext 48
olink.pubid 48
olink.sysid 48
olink.resolver 49
XIV. Cross References 144
collect.xref.targets 137
insert.xref.page.number 144
use.role.as.xrefstyle 163
xref.with.number.and.title 167
xref.label-page.separator 144
xref.label-title.separator 144
xref.title-page.separator 145
XV. Lists 230
segmentedlist.as.table 159
variablelist.as.table 53
variablelist.term.separator 230
variablelist.term.break.after 230

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

XVI. Bibliography 151
biblioentry.item.separator 151
bibliography.collection 151
bibliography.numbered 152
XVII. Glossary 153
glossterm.auto.link 153
firstterm.only.link 153
glossary.collection 153
glossary.sort 157
glossentry.show.acronym 157
XVIII. Miscellaneous 158
formal.procedures 158
formal.title.placement 158
runinhead.default.title.end.punct 158
runinhead.title.end.punct 158
show.comments 159
show.revisionflag 63
shade.verbatim 161
shade.verbatim.style 161
punct.honorific 159
tex.math.in.alt 121
tex.math.file 65
tex.math.delims 122
pixels.per.inch 65
points.per.em 65
use.svg 162
menuchoice.separator 164
menuchoice.menu.separator 164
default.float.class 164
footnote.number.format 165
table.footnote.number.format 165
footnote.number.symbols 165
table.footnote.number.symbols 166
highlight.source 168
highlight.default.language 169
email.delimiters.enabled 253
XIX. Annotations 70
annotation.support 70
annotation.js 70
annotation.css 70
annotation.graphic.open 71
annotation.graphic.close 71
XX. Graphics 170
img.src.path 171
keep.relative.image.uris 171
graphic.default.extension 170
default.image.width 170
nominal.image.width 73
nominal.image.depth 73
use.embed.for.svg 73
make.graphic.viewport 74
preferred.mediaobject.role 170
use.role.for.mediaobject 170
ignore.image.scaling 171
XXI. Chunking 76
chunker.output.cdata-section-elements 76
chunker.output.doctype-public 76
chunker.output.doctype-system 76

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

chunker.output.encoding 76
chunker.output.indent 77
chunker.output.media-type 77
chunker.output.method 77
chunker.output.omit-xml-declaration 78
chunker.output.standalone 78
saxon.character.representation 78
html.ext 78
use.id.as.filename 79
html.extra.head.links 79
root.filename 79
base.dir 79
generate.manifest 80
manifest 80
manifest.in.base.dir 80
chunk.toc 80
chunk.tocs.and.lots 81
chunk.separate.lots 81
chunk.tocs.and.lots.has.title 81
chunk.section.depth 81
chunk.first.sections 81
chunk.quietly 82
chunk.append 82
navig.graphics 82
navig.graphics.extension 82
navig.graphics.path 83
navig.showtitles 83
XXII. Profiling 209
profile.arch 209
profile.condition 209
profile.conformance 209
profile.lang 210
profile.os 210
profile.revision 210
profile.revisionflag 210
profile.role 211
profile.security 211
profile.status 212
profile.userlevel 212
profile.vendor 212
profile.attribute 212
profile.value 213
profile.separator 213
XXIII. HTML Help 89
htmlhelp.encoding 89
htmlhelp.autolabel 89
htmlhelp.chm 89
htmlhelp.default.topic 89
htmlhelp.display.progress 90
htmlhelp.hhp 90
htmlhelp.hhc 90
htmlhelp.hhk 90
htmlhelp.hhp.tail 90
htmlhelp.hhp.window 91
htmlhelp.hhp.windows 91
htmlhelp.enhanced.decompilation 91
htmlhelp.enumerate.images 91
htmlhelp.force.map.and.alias 92

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

htmlhelp.map.file ... 92
htmlhelp.alias.file ... 92
htmlhelp.hhc.section.depth ... 92
htmlhelp.hhc.show.root ... 92
htmlhelp.hhc.folders.instead.books ... 93
htmlhelp.hhc.binary ... 93
htmlhelp.hhc.width ... 93
htmlhelp.title ... 93
htmlhelp.show.menu ... 94
htmlhelp.show.toolbar.text ... 94
htmlhelp.show.advanced.search ... 94
htmlhelp.show.favorities ... 94
htmlhelp.button.hideshow ... 94
htmlhelp.button.back ... 95
htmlhelp.button.forward ... 95
htmlhelp.button.stop ... 95
htmlhelp.button.refresh ... 95
htmlhelp.button.home ... 96
htmlhelp.button.home.url ... 96
htmlhelp.button.options ... 96
htmlhelp.button.print ... 96
htmlhelp.button.locate ... 96
htmlhelp.button.jump1 ... 97
htmlhelp.button.jump1.url ... 97
htmlhelp.button.jump1.title ... 97
htmlhelp.button.jump2 ... 97
htmlhelp.button.jump2.url ... 97
htmlhelp.button.jump2.title ... 98
htmlhelp.button.next ... 98
htmlhelp.button.prev ... 98
htmlhelp.button.zoom ... 98
htmlhelp.remember.window.position ... 99
htmlhelp.window.geometry ... 99
htmlhelp.use.hhk ... 99
htmlhelp.only ... 99
XXIV. Eclipse Help Platform ... 100
eclipse.autolabel ... 100
eclipse.plugin.name ... 100
eclipse.plugin.id ... 100
eclipse.plugin.provider ... 100
XXV. Localization ... 214
l10n.gentext.language ... 214
l10n.gentext.default.language ... 214
l10n.gentext.use.xref.language ... 214
l10n.lang.value.rfc.compliant ... 215
II. FO Parameter Reference ... 103
XXVI. Admonitions ... 104
admon.graphics ... 104
admon.graphics.extension ... 104
admon.graphics.path ... 104
admon.textlabel ... 104
admonition.title.properties ... 104
admonition.properties ... 105
graphical.admonition.properties ... 105
nongraphical.admonition.properties ... 105
XXVII. Callouts ... 107
callout.defaultcolumn ... 107
callout.graphics ... 107

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

callout.graphics.extension 107
callout.graphics.number.limit 107
callout.graphics.path 107
callout.unicode 108
callout.unicode.font 108
callout.unicode.number.limit 108
callout.unicode.start.character 108
callouts.extension 109
XXVIII. ToC/LoT/Index Generation 110
autotoc.label.separator 110
process.empty.source.toc 110
process.source.toc 110
generate.toc 110
generate.index 112
make.index.markup 112
index.method 113
index.on.type 114
index.on.role 114
index.preferred.page.properties 114
index.entry.properties 115
index.div.title.properties 115
index.number.separator 115
index.range.separator 116
index.term.separator 116
xep.index.item.properties 117
toc.section.depth 117
toc.max.depth 117
toc.indent.width 117
toc.line.properties 118
toc.margin.properties 118
bridgehead.in.toc 118
simplesect.in.toc 119
generate.section.toc.level 119
XXIX. Processor Extensions 120
arbortext.extensions 120
axf.extensions 120
fop.extensions 120
fop1.extensions 120
passivetex.extensions 121
tex.math.in.alt 121
tex.math.delims 122
xep.extensions 122
XXX. Stylesheet Extensions 123
linenumbering.everyNth 123
linenumbering.extension 123
linenumbering.separator 123
linenumbering.width 123
tablecolumns.extension 123
textinsert.extension 124
textdata.default.encoding 124
use.extensions 124
XXXI. Automatic labelling 125
appendix.autolabel 125
chapter.autolabel 125
part.autolabel 126
reference.autolabel 126
preface.autolabel 127
section.autolabel 127

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

section.autolabel.max.depth ... 127
section.label.includes.component.label ... 128
label.from.part ... 128
component.label.includes.part.label ... 128
XXXII. XSLT Processing ... 129
rootid ... 129
XXXIII. Meta/*Info ... 130
make.single.year.ranges ... 130
make.year.ranges ... 130
author.othername.in.middle ... 130
XXXIV. Reference Pages ... 131
funcsynopsis.decoration ... 131
funcsynopsis.style ... 131
function.parens ... 131
refentry.generate.name ... 131
refentry.generate.title ... 131
refentry.pagebreak ... 132
refentry.title.properties ... 132
refentry.xref.manvolnum ... 133
refclass.suppress ... 133
XXXV. Tables ... 134
default.table.width ... 134
nominal.table.width ... 134
table.cell.padding ... 134
table.frame.border.thickness ... 134
table.frame.border.style ... 135
table.frame.border.color ... 135
table.cell.border.thickness ... 135
table.cell.border.style ... 135
table.cell.border.color ... 135
table.table.properties ... 136
XXXVI. Linking ... 226
current.docid ... 137
collect.xref.targets ... 137
insert.olink.page.number ... 137
insert.olink.pdf.frag ... 138
olink.base.uri ... 138
olink.debug ... 139
olink.doctitle ... 139
olink.lang.fallback.sequence ... 140
olink.properties ... 141
prefer.internal.olink ... 141
target.database.document ... 142
targets.filename ... 142
use.local.olink.style ... 142
XXXVII. Cross References ... 144
insert.xref.page.number ... 144
xref.properties ... 144
xref.label-title.separator ... 144
xref.label-page.separator ... 144
xref.title-page.separator ... 145
insert.link.page.number ... 145
XXXVIII. Lists ... 230
compact.list.item.spacing ... 146
itemizedlist.properties ... 146
itemizedlist.label.properties ... 146
itemizedlist.label.width ... 146
list.block.properties ... 147

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

list.block.spacing 147
list.item.spacing 147
orderedlist.properties 147
orderedlist.label.properties 148
orderedlist.label.width 148
variablelist.max.termlength 148
variablelist.term.separator 230
variablelist.term.break.after 230
XXXIX. QAndASet 150
qandadiv.autolabel 150
qanda.inherit.numeration 150
qanda.defaultlabel 150
XL. Bibliography 151
biblioentry.item.separator 151
bibliography.collection 151
bibliography.numbered 152
biblioentry.properties 152
XLI. Glossary 153
glossterm.auto.link 153
firstterm.only.link 153
glossary.collection 153
glossterm.separation 156
glossterm.width 156
glossary.as.blocks 156
glosslist.as.blocks 157
glossentry.show.acronym 157
glossary.sort 157
XLII. Miscellaneous 158
formal.procedures 158
formal.title.placement 158
runinhead.default.title.end.punct 158
runinhead.title.end.punct 158
show.comments 159
punct.honorific 159
segmentedlist.as.table 159
variablelist.as.blocks 159
blockquote.properties 160
ulink.show 160
ulink.footnotes 160
ulink.hyphenate 161
ulink.hyphenate.chars 161
shade.verbatim 161
shade.verbatim.style 161
hyphenate.verbatim 162
hyphenate.verbatim.characters 162
use.svg 162
use.role.as.xrefstyle 163
menuchoice.separator 164
menuchoice.menu.separator 164
default.float.class 164
footnote.number.format 165
table.footnote.number.format 165
footnote.number.symbols 165
table.footnote.number.symbols 166
footnote.properties 166
table.footnote.properties 166
footnote.mark.properties 167
footnote.sep.leader.properties 167

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

xref.with.number.and.title 167
superscript.properties 168
subscript.properties 168
pgwide.properties 168
highlight.source 168
highlight.default.language 169
email.delimiters.enabled 253
XLIII. Graphics 170
graphic.default.extension 170
default.image.width 170
preferred.mediaobject.role 170
use.role.for.mediaobject 170
ignore.image.scaling 171
img.src.path 171
keep.relative.image.uris 171
XLIV. Pagination and General Styles 219
page.height 174
page.height.portrait 174
page.margin.bottom 175
page.margin.inner 175
page.margin.outer 176
page.margin.top 176
page.orientation 176
page.width 177
page.width.portrait 177
paper.type 178
double.sided 178
body.margin.bottom 178
body.margin.top 178
body.start.indent 179
body.end.indent 179
alignment 179
hyphenate 180
line-height 180
column.count.back 180
column.count.body 180
column.count.front 180
column.count.index 181
column.count.lot 181
column.count.titlepage 181
column.gap.back 181
column.gap.body 182
column.gap.front 182
column.gap.index 182
column.gap.lot 182
column.gap.titlepage 182
region.after.extent 183
region.before.extent 183
default.units 183
normal.para.spacing 183
body.font.master 184
body.font.size 184
footnote.font.size 184
title.margin.left 184
draft.mode 185
draft.watermark.image 185
headers.on.blank.pages 185
footers.on.blank.pages 185

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

header.rule 186
footer.rule 186
header.column.widths 186
footer.column.widths 187
header.table.height 187
footer.table.height 188
header.content.properties 188
footer.content.properties 188
marker.section.level 189
XLV. Font Families 225
body.font.family 190
dingbat.font.family 190
monospace.font.family 190
sans.font.family 190
title.font.family 190
symbol.font.family 191
XLVI. Property Sets 192
formal.object.properties 192
formal.title.properties 192
informal.object.properties 192
monospace.properties 193
verbatim.properties 193
monospace.verbatim.properties 193
sidebar.properties 194
sidebar.title.properties 194
sidebar.float.type 194
sidebar.float.width 195
margin.note.properties 195
margin.note.title.properties 196
margin.note.float.type 196
margin.note.width 196
component.title.properties 197
section.title.properties 197
section.title.level1.properties 197
section.title.level2.properties 198
section.title.level3.properties 198
section.title.level4.properties 198
section.title.level5.properties 199
section.title.level6.properties 199
section.properties 199
section.level1.properties 199
section.level2.properties 200
section.level3.properties 200
section.level4.properties 201
section.level5.properties 201
section.level6.properties 201
figure.properties 202
example.properties 202
equation.properties 202
table.properties 202
informalfigure.properties 203
informalexample.properties 203
informalequation.properties 203
informaltable.properties 203
procedure.properties 204
root.properties 204
qanda.title.properties 204
qanda.title.level1.properties 205

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

qanda.title.level2.properties 205
qanda.title.level3.properties 205
qanda.title.level4.properties 206
qanda.title.level5.properties 206
qanda.title.level6.properties 206
article.appendix.title.properties 207
abstract.properties 207
abstract.title.properties 207
index.page.number.properties 208
revhistory.table.properties 208
revhistory.table.cell.properties 208
revhistory.title.properties 208
XLVII. Profiling 209
profile.arch 209
profile.condition 209
profile.conformance 209
profile.lang 210
profile.os 210
profile.revision 210
profile.revisionflag 210
profile.role 211
profile.security 211
profile.status 212
profile.userlevel 212
profile.vendor 212
profile.attribute 212
profile.value 213
profile.separator 213
XLVIII. Localization 214
l10n.gentext.language 214
l10n.gentext.default.language 214
l10n.gentext.use.xref.language 214
l10n.lang.value.rfc.compliant 215
XLIX. EBNF 216
ebnf.assignment 216
ebnf.statement.terminator 216
L. Prepress 217
crop.marks 217
crop.mark.width 217
crop.mark.offset 217
crop.mark.bleed 217
III. Manpages Parameter Reference 218
LI. Hyphenation, justification, and breaking 219
man.hyphenate 219
man.hyphenate.urls 219
man.hyphenate.filenames 220
man.hyphenate.computer.inlines 220
man.justify 221
man.break.after.slash 221
LII. Indentation 223
man.indent.width 223
man.indent.refsect 223
man.indent.blurbs 224
man.indent.lists 224
man.indent.verbatims 224
LIII. Fonts 225
man.font.funcprototype 225
man.font.funcsynopsisinfo 225

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

man.font.table.headings ... 225
man.font.table.title ... 225
LIV. Link handling ... 226
man.links.are.numbered ... 226
man.links.are.underlined ... 227
man.links.list.enabled ... 227
man.links.list.heading ... 228
LV. Lists ... 230
man.segtitle.suppress ... 230
variablelist.term.separator ... 230
variablelist.term.break.after ... 230
LVI. Character/string substitution ... 231
man.charmap.enabled ... 231
man.charmap.uri ... 231
man.charmap.use.subset ... 232
man.charmap.subset.profile ... 232
man.string.subst.map.local.pre ... 236
man.string.subst.map ... 236
man.string.subst.map.local.post ... 239
LVII. Refentry metadata gathering ... 241
refentry.meta.get.quietly ... 241
refentry.date.profile ... 241
refentry.date.profile.enabled ... 241
refentry.manual.profile ... 242
refentry.manual.profile.enabled ... 242
refentry.source.name.suppress ... 243
refentry.source.name.profile ... 243
refentry.source.name.profile.enabled ... 244
refentry.version.suppress ... 244
refentry.version.profile ... 245
refentry.version.profile.enabled ... 245
refentry.manual.fallback.profile ... 245
refentry.source.fallback.profile ... 246
LVIII. Page header/footer ... 247
man.th.extra1.suppress ... 247
man.th.extra2.suppress ... 247
man.th.extra3.suppress ... 247
man.th.title.max.length ... 248
man.th.extra2.max.length ... 248
man.th.extra3.max.length ... 249
LIX. Output ... 250
man.output.manifest.enabled ... 250
man.output.manifest.filename ... 250
man.output.in.separate.dir ... 250
man.output.lang.in.name.enabled ... 250
man.output.base.dir ... 251
man.output.subdirs.enabled ... 251
man.output.quietly ... 251
man.output.encoding ... 252
LX. Other ... 253
man.table.footnotes.divider ... 253
man.subheading.divider.enabled ... 253
man.subheading.divider ... 253
email.delimiters.enabled ... 253
IV. Roundtrip Parameter Reference ... 255
LXI. Parameters ... 277
wordml.template ... 256
pages.template ... 256

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

V. Slides Parameter Reference 257
LXII. FO: General Params 258
slide.title.font.family 258
slide.font.family 258
foil.title.master 258
foil.title.size 258
LXIII. FO: Property Sets 259
slides.properties 259
foilgroup.properties 259
foil.subtitle.properties 259
foil.properties 260
speakernote.properties 260
running.foot.properties 260
LXIV. HTML: General Parameters 261
keyboard.nav 261
css.stylesheet 261
css.stylesheet.dir 261
titlefoil.html 261
toc.html 262
foilgroup.toc 262
output.indent 262
overlay 262
show.foil.number 262
LXV. HTML: Frame Parameters 264
nav.separator 264
toc.row.height 264
toc.bg.color 264
body.bg.color 264
toc.width 264
toc.hide.show 265
dynamic.toc 265
active.toc 265
overlay.logo 265
multiframe 266
multiframe.top.bgcolor 266
multiframe.bottom.bgcolor 266
multiframe.navigation.height 266
LXVI. HTML: Graphics Parameters 268
graphics.dir 268
bullet.image 268
next.image 268
prev.image 268
up.image 268
home.image 269
toc.image 269
no.next.image 269
no.prev.image 269
no.up.image 270
no.home.image 270
no.toc.image 270
plus.image 270
minus.image 270
hidetoc.image 271
showtoc.image 271
LXVII. HTML: JavaScript Parameters 272
script.dir 272
ua.js 272
xbDOM.js 272

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

xbStyle.js ... 272
xbLibrary.js ... 273
xbCollapsibleLists.js ... 273
overlay.js ... 273
slides.js ... 273
LXVIII. HTML: Localization Parameters ... 274
text.home ... 274
text.toc ... 274
text.prev ... 274
text.up ... 274
text.next ... 274
VI. Website Parameter Reference ... 276
LXIX. Parameters ... 277
header.hr ... 277
footer.hr ... 277
feedback.href ... 277
feedback.with.ids ... 277
feedback.link.text ... 277
filename-prefix ... 278
autolayout-file ... 278
output-root ... 278
dry-run ... 278
rebuild-all ... 279
nav.table.summary ... 279
navtocwidth ... 279
navbodywidth ... 280
textbgcolor ... 280
navbgcolor ... 280
toc.spacer.graphic ... 280
toc.spacer.text ... 281
toc.spacer.image ... 281
toc.pointer.graphic ... 281
toc.pointer.text ... 281
toc.pointer.image ... 282
toc.blank.graphic ... 282
toc.blank.text ... 282
toc.blank.image ... 282
suppress.homepage.title ... 283
body.attributes ... 283
sequential.links ... 283
currentpage.marker ... 283
banner.before.navigation ... 283
table.spacer.image ... 284
VII. Processing Instruction Reference ... 285
LXX. HTML PIs ... 286
<?dbhtml filename="..."?> ... 286
<?dbhtml dir="..."?> ... 286
LXXI. Common PIs ... 305
... 287
VIII. XSL Library Template Reference ... 288
LXXII. General Library Templates ... 289
dot.count ... 289
copy-string ... 289
string.subst ... 289
xpointer.idref ... 290
length-magnitude ... 291
length-units ... 291
length-spec ... 292

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

length-in-points ... 292
pi-attribute ... 293
lookup.key ... 294
xpath.location ... 295
comment-escape-string ... 295
comment-escape-string.recursive ... 296
prepend-pad ... 296
trim.text ... 297
str.tokenize.keep.delimiters ... 298
apply-string-subst-map ... 299
apply-character-map ... 300
read-character-map ... 301
LXXIII. Relative URI Functions ... 303
count.uri.path.depth ... 303
trim.common.uri.paths ... 303
IX. Common Template Reference ... 305
LXXIV. Templates ... 306
is.component ... 306
is.section ... 306
section.level ... 306
qanda.section.level ... 307
select.mediaobject ... 307
select.mediaobject.index ... 307
is.acceptable.mediaobject ... 308
check.id.unique ... 308
check.idref.targets ... 309
copyright.years ... 309
find.path.params ... 310
string.upper ... 310
string.lower ... 310
select.choice.separator ... 311
evaluate.info.profile ... 311
log.message ... 312
X. Refentry Metadata-Gathering Template Reference ... 313
LXXV. Templates ... 314
get.refentry.metadata ... 314
get.refentry.title ... 315
get.refentry.section ... 315
get.refentry.date ... 316
get.refentry.source ... 316
get.refentry.source.name ... 317
get.refentry.version ... 317
get.refentry.manual ... 318
get.refentry.metadata.prefs ... 319
set.refentry.metadata ... 319
XI. Formatting Object Table Reference ... 321
LXXVI. Templates ... 322
calc.column.width ... 322
XII. Template Stylesheet Reference ... 324
LXXVII. Templates ... 324
t:templates ... 324
xsl:* ... 324
t:titlepage ... 324
@* (in copy.literal.atts mode) ... 325
t:titlepage-content ... 325
t:titlepage-separator ... 326
t:titlepage-before ... 326
* (in copy mode) ... 326

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

@* (in copy mode) 326
* (in document.order mode) 326
* (in document.order mode) 327
* (in titlepage.specialrules mode) 327
* (in titlepage.subrules mode) 327
t:or 327
t:or (in titlepage.subrules mode) 328
element-or-list 328

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

List of Figures

1. Page Model 173

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

About this document

This is generated reference documentation for the DocBook XSL stylesheets, primarily documentation on the parameters you can adjust to control the behavior of the stylesheets.

Note

This is purely reference documentation – not how-to documentation. For a thorough step-by-step how-to guide to publishing content using the DocBook XSL stylesheets, see Bob Stayton's DocBook XSL: The Complete Guide[1], available online at http://www.sagehill.net/docbookxsl/index.html

This document is divided into two sets of references: the first set provides user documentation; the second, developer documentation.

User documentation

- HTML Parameter Reference
- FO Parameter Reference
- Manpages Parameter Reference
- Roundtrip Parameter Reference
- Slides Parameter Reference
- Website Parameter Reference
- Processing Instruction Reference

Developer documentation

- XSL Library Template Reference
- Common Template Reference
- Refentry Metadata-Gathering Template Reference
- Formatting Object Table Reference
- Template Stylesheet Reference

[1] http://www.sagehill.net/book-description.html

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Part I. HTML Parameter Reference

This is reference documentation for all user-configurable parameters in the DocBook XSL HTML stylesheets (for generating HTML output).

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Admonitions

Name

admon.graphics.extension — Extension for admonition graphics

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="admon.graphics.extension" select="'.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Sets the extension to use on admonition graphics.

Name

admon.graphics.path — Path to admonition graphics

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="admon.graphics.path">images/</xsl:param>
```

Description

Sets the path, probably relative to the directory where the HTML files are created, to the admonition graphics.

Name

admon.graphics — Use graphics in admonitions?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="admon.graphics" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), admonitions are presented in an alternate style that uses a graphic. Default graphics are provided in the distribution.

Name

admon.textlabel — Use text label in admonitions?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="admon.textlabel" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), admonitions are presented with a generated text label such as Note or Warning in the appropriate language. If zero, such labels are turned off, but any title child of the admonition element are still output. The default value is 1.

Name

admon.style — CSS style attributes for admonitions

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="admon.style">
  <xsl:text>margin-left: 0.5in; margin-right: 0.5in;</xsl:text>
</xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the value of the STYLE attribute that should be added to admonitions.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Callouts

Name

callout.defaultcolumn — Indicates what column callouts appear in by default

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.defaultcolumn" select="'60'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If a callout does not identify a column (for example, if it uses the `linerange unit`), it will appear in the default column.

Name

callout.graphics.extension — Extension for callout graphics

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.graphics.extension" select="'.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Sets the extension to use on callout graphics.

Name

callout.graphics.number.limit — Number of the largest callout graphic

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.graphics.number.limit" select="'15'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If *`callout.graphics`* is non-zero, graphics are used to represent callout numbers. The value of *`callout.graphics.number.limit`* is the largest number for which a graphic exists. If the callout number exceeds this limit, the default presentation "(nnn)" will always be used.

Name

callout.graphics.path — Path to callout graphics

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.graphics.path" select="'images/callouts/'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Sets the path, probably relative to the directory where the HTML files are created, to the callout graphics.

Name

callout.graphics — Use graphics for callouts?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.graphics" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, callouts are presented with graphics (e.g., reverse-video circled numbers instead of "(1)", "(2)", etc.). Default graphics are provided in the distribution.

Name

callout.list.table — Present callout lists using a table?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.list.table" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The default presentation of `CalloutList`s uses an HTML `DL`. Some browsers don't align DLs very well if *`callout.graphics`* are used. With this option turned on, `CalloutList`s are presented in an HTML `TABLE`, which usually results in better alignment of the callout number with the callout description.

Name

callout.unicode.number.limit — Number of the largest callout graphic

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.unicode.number.limit" select="'10'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If *`callout.unicode`* is non-zero, unicode characters are used to represent callout numbers. The value of *`callout.unicode.number.limit`* is the largest number for which a unicode character exists. If the callout number exceeds this limit, the default presentation "(nnn)" will always be used.

Name

callout.unicode.start.character — First Unicode character to use, decimal value.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.unicode.start.character" select="10102"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If *`callout.graphics`* is zero and *`callout.unicode`* is non-zero, unicode characters are used to represent callout numbers. The value of *`callout.unicode.start.character`* is the decimal unicode value used for callout number one. Currently, only 10102 is supported in the stylesheets for this parameter.

Name

callout.unicode — Use Unicode characters rather than images for callouts.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.unicode" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The stylesheets can use either an image of the numbers one to ten, or the single Unicode character which represents the numeral, in white on a black background. Use this to select the Unicode character option.

Name

callouts.extension — Enable the callout extension

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callouts.extension" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The callouts extension processes `areaset` elements in `ProgramListingCO` and other text-based callout elements.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

EBNF

Name

ebnf.table.bgcolor — Background color for EBNF tables

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="ebnf.table.bgcolor" select="'#F5DCB3'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Sets the background color for EBNF tables. No `bgcolor` attribute is output if `ebnf.table.bgcolor` is set to the null string. The default value matches the value used in recent online versions of the W3C's XML Spec productions.

Name

ebnf.table.border — Selects border on EBNF tables

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="ebnf.table.border" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Selects the border on EBNF tables. If non-zero, the tables have borders, otherwise they don't.

Name

ebnf.assignment — The EBNF production assignment operator

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="ebnf.assignment">
<code>::=</code>
</xsl:param>
```

Description

The *`ebnf.assignment`* parameter determines what text is used to show “assignment” in `production`s in `productionset`s.

While “`::=`” is common, so are several other operators.

Name

ebnf.statement.terminator — Punctuation that ends an EBNF statement.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="ebnf.statement.terminator"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

The *`ebnf.statement.terminator`* parameter determines what text is used to terminate each `production` in `productionset`.

Some notations end each statement with a period.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

ToC/LoT/Index Generation

Name

annotate.toc — Annotate the Table of Contents?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="annotate.toc" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true, TOCs will be annotated. At present, this just means that the `RefPurpose` of `RefEntry` TOC entries will be displayed.

Name

autotoc.label.separator — Separator between labels and titles in the ToC

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="autotoc.label.separator" select="'. '"></xsl:param>
```

Description

String to use to seperate labels and title in a table of contents.

Name

autotoc.label.in.hyperlink — Include lable in hyperlinked titles in TOC?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="autotoc.label.in.hyperlink" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *`autotoc.label.in.hyperlink`* is non-zero, labels are included in hyperlinked titles in the TOC. If it is instead zero, labels are still displayed prior to the hyperlinked titles, but are not hyperlinked along with the titles.

Name

process.source.toc — Process a non-empty `toc` element if it occurs in a source document?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="process.source.toc" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies that the contents of a non-empty "hard-coded" `toc` element in a source document are processed to generate a TOC in output.

Note

This parameter has no effect on automated generation of TOCs. An automated TOC may still be generated along with the "hard-coded" TOC. To suppress automated TOC generation, adjust the value of the *`generate.toc`* paramameter.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

The `process.source.toc` parameter also has no effect if the `toc` element is empty; handling for empty `toc` is controlled by the *`process.empty.source.toc`* parameter.

Name

process.empty.source.toc — Generate automated TOC if `toc` element occurs in a source document?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="process.empty.source.toc" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies that if an empty `toc` element is found in a source document, an automated TOC is generated.

Note

Depending on what the value of the *`generate.toc`* parameter is, setting this parameter to `1` could result in generation of duplicate automated TOCs. So the *`process.empty.source.toc`* is primarily useful as an "override": by placing an empty `toc` in your document and setting this parameter to `1`, you can force a TOC to be generated even if `generate.toc` says not to.

Name

bridgehead.in.toc — Should bridgehead elements appear in the TOC?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="bridgehead.in.toc" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, bridgeheads appear in the TOC. Note that this option is not fully supported and may be removed in a future version of the stylesheets.

Name

simplesect.in.toc — Should `simplesect` elements appear in the TOC?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="simplesect.in.toc" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, `simplesect`s appear in the TOC.

Name

manual.toc — An explicit TOC to be used for the TOC

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="manual.toc" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The *`manual.toc`* identifies an explicit TOC that will be used for building the printed TOC.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

toc.list.type — Type of HTML list element to use for Tables of Contents

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.list.type">dl</xsl:param>
```

Description

When an automatically generated Table of Contents (or List of Titles) is produced, this HTML element will be used to make the list.

Name

toc.section.depth — How deep should recursive `section`s appear in the TOC?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.section.depth">2</xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the depth to which recursive sections should appear in the TOC.

Name

toc.max.depth — How maximaly deep should be each TOC?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.max.depth">8</xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the maximal depth of TOC on all levels.

Name

generate.toc — Control generation of ToCs and LoTs

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="generate.toc">
appendix  toc,title
article/appendix  nop
article   toc,title
book      toc,title,figure,table,example,equation
chapter   toc,title
part      toc,title
preface   toc,title
qandadiv  toc
qandaset  toc
reference toc,title
sect1     toc
sect2     toc
sect3     toc
sect4     toc
sect5     toc
section   toc
set       toc,title
</xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

This parameter has a structured value. It is a table of space-delimited path/value pairs. Each path identifies some element in the source document using a restricted subset of XPath (only the implicit child axis, no wildcards, no predicates). Paths can be either relative or absolute.

When processing a particular element, the stylesheets consult this table to determine if a ToC (or LoT(s)) should be generated.

For example, consider the entry:

```
book toc,figure
```

This indicates that whenever a `book` is formatted, a Table Of Contents and a List of Figures should be generated. Similarly,

```
/chapter toc
```

indicates that whenever a document *that has a root of* `chapter` is formatted, a Table of Contents should be generated. The entry `chapter` would match all chapters, but `/chapter` matches only `chapter` document elements.

Generally, the longest match wins. So, for example, if you want to distinguish articles in books from articles in parts, you could use these two entries:

```
book/article toc,figure
part/article toc
```

Note that an article in a part can never match a `book/article`, so if you want nothing to be generated for articles in parts, you can simply leave that rule out.

If you want to leave the rule in, to make it explicit that you're turning something off, use the value “nop”. For example, the following entry disables ToCs and LoTs for articles:

```
article nop
```

Do not simply leave the word “article” in the file without a matching value. That'd be just begging the silly little path/value parser to get confused.

Section ToCs are further controlled by the *`generate.section.toc.level`* parameter. For a given section level to have a ToC, it must have both an entry in *`generate.toc`* and be within the range enabled by *`generate.section.toc.level`*.

Name

generate.section.toc.level — Control depth of TOC generation in sections

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="generate.section.toc.level" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The *`generate.section.toc.level`* parameter controls the depth of section in which TOCs will be generated. Note that this is related to, but not the same as *`toc.section.depth`*, which controls the depth to which TOC entries will be generated in a given TOC.

If, for example, *`generate.section.toc.level`* is `3`, TOCs will be generated in first, second, and third level sections, but not in fourth level sections.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

generate.index — Do you want an index?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="generate.index" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specify if an index should be generated.

Name

index.method — Select method used to group index entries in an index

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="index.method" select="'basic'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter lets you select which method should be used to sort and group index entries in an index. Indexes in latin-based languages that have accented characters typically sort together accented words and unaccented words. Thus “Á” (A acute) would sort together with “A”, so both would appear in the “A” section of the index. Languages using other alphabets (such as Russian cyrillic) and languages using ideographic chararacters (such as Japanese) require grouping specific to the languages and alphabets.

The default indexing method is limited. It can group accented characters in latin-based languages only. It cannot handle non-latin alphabets or ideographic languages. The other indexing methods require extensions of one type or another, and do not work with all XSLT processors, which is why there are not used by default.

The three choices for indexing method are:

`basic`
: (default) Sort and groups words based only on the Latin alphabet. Words with accented latin letters will group and sort with their respective primary letter, but words in non-Latin alphabets will be put in the “Symbols” section of the index.

`kosek`
: Sort and groups words based on letter groups configured in the DocBook locale file for the given language. See, for example, the French locale file `common/fr.xml`. This method requires that the XSLT processor support the EXSLT extensions (most do). It also requires support for using user-defined functions in xsl:key (xsltproc does not).

  This method is suitable for any language for which you can list all the individual characters that should appear in each letter group in an index. It is probably not practical to use it for ideographic languages such as Chinese that have hundreds or thousands of characters.

  To use the kosek method, you must:

  1. Use a processor that supports its extensions, such as Saxon 6 or Xalan (xsltproc and Saxon 8 do not).
  2. Set the index.method parameter's value to “kosek”.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

3. Import the appropriate index extensions stylesheet module `fo/autoidx-kosek.xsl` or `html/autoidx-kosek.xsl` into your customization.

`kimber`

This method uses extensions to the Saxon processor to implement sophisticated indexing processes. It uses its own configuration file, which can include information for any number of languages. Each language's configuration can group words using one of two processes. In the enumerated process similar to that used in the kosek method, you indicate the groupings character-by-character. In the between-key process, you specify the break-points in the sort order that should start a new group. The latter configuration is useful for ideographic languages such as Chinese, Japanese, and Korean. You can also define your own collation algorithms and how you want mixed Latin-alphabet words sorted.

- For a whitepaper describing the extensions, see: http://www.innodata-isogen.com/knowledge_center/white_papers/back_of_book_for_xsl_fo.pdf.
- To download the extension library, see http://www.innodata-isogen.com/knowledge_center/tools_downloads/i18nsupport.

To use the kimber method, you must:

1. Use Saxon (version 6 or 8) as your XSLT processor.
2. Install and configure the Innodata Isogen library, using the documentation that comes with it.
3. Set the index.method parameter's value to “kimber”.
4. Import the appropriate index extensions stylesheet module `fo/autoidx-kimber.xsl` or `html/autoidx-kimber.xsl` into your customization.

Name

index.on.type — Select indexterms based on `type` attribute value

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="index.on.type" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, then an `index` element that has a `type` attribute value will contain only those `indexterm` elements with a matching `type` attribute value. If an `index` has no `type` attribute or it is blank, then the index will contain all `indexterm`s in the current scope.

If `index.on.type` is zero, then the `type` attribute has no effect on selecting indexterms for an index.

For those using DocBook version 4.2 or earlier, the `type` attribute is not available for index terms. However, you can achieve the same effect by using the `role` attribute in the same manner on `indexterm` and `index`, and setting the stylesheet parameter *`index.on.role`* to a nonzero value.

Name

index.on.role — Select indexterms based on role value

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="index.on.role" select="0"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

If non-zero, then an `index` element that has a `role` attribute value will contain only those `indexterm` elements with a matching role value. If an `index` has no `role` attribute or it is blank, then the index will contain all `indexterm`s in the current scope.

If `index.on.role` is zero, then the `role` attribute has no effect on selecting indexterms for an index.

If you are using DocBook version 4.3 or later, you should use the `type` attribute instead of `role` on `indexterm` and `index`, and set the *`index.on.type`* to a nonzero value.

Name

index.prefer.titleabbrev — Should be abbreviated titles used as back references

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="index.prefer.titleabbrev" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

index.term.separator — Override for punctuation separating an index term from its list of page references in an index

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="index.term.separator" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter permits you to override the text to insert between the end of an index term and its list of page references. Typically that might be a comma and a space.

Because this text may be locale dependent, this parameter's value is normally taken from a gentext template named 'term-separator' in the context 'index' in the stylesheet locale file for the language of the current document. This parameter can be used to override the gentext string, and would typically be used on the command line. This parameter would apply to all languages.

So this text string can be customized in two ways. You can reset the default gentext string using the *`local.l10n.xml`* parameter, or you can fill in the content for this normally empty override parameter. The content can be a simple string, or it can be something more complex such as a call-template. For fo output, it could be an `fo:leader` element to provide space of a specific length, or a dot leader.

Name

index.number.separator — Override for punctuation separating page numbers in index

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="index.number.separator" select="''"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

This parameter permits you to override the text to insert between page references in a formatted index entry. Typically that would be a comma and a space.

Because this text may be locale dependent, this parameter's value is normally taken from a gentext template named 'number-separator' in the context 'index' in the stylesheet locale file for the language of the current document. This parameter can be used to override the gentext string, and would typically be used on the command line. This parameter would apply to all languages.

So this text string can be customized in two ways. You can reset the default gentext string using the `local.l10n.xml` parameter, or you can override the gentext with the content of this parameter. The content can be a simple string, or it can be something more complex such as a call-template.

In HTML index output, section title references are used instead of page number references. This punctuation appears between such section titles in an HTML index.

Name

index.range.separator — Override for punctuation separating the two numbers in a page range in index

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="index.range.separator" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter permits you to override the text to insert between the two numbers of a page range in an index. This parameter is only used by those XSL-FO processors that support an extension for generating such page ranges (such as XEP).

Because this text may be locale dependent, this parameter's value is normally taken from a gentext template named 'range-separator' in the context 'index' in the stylesheet locale file for the language of the current document. This parameter can be used to override the gentext string, and would typically be used on the command line. This parameter would apply to all languages.

So this text string can be customized in two ways. You can reset the default gentext string using the `local.l10n.xml` parameter, or you can override the gentext with the content of this parameter. The content can be a simple string, or it can be something more complex such as a call-template.

In HTML index output, section title references are used instead of page number references. So there are no page ranges and this parameter has no effect.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Stylesheet Extensions

Name

linenumbering.everyNth — Indicate which lines should be numbered

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="linenumbering.everyNth" select="'5'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If line numbering is enabled, everyNth line will be numbered.

Name

linenumbering.extension — Enable the line numbering extension

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="linenumbering.extension" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true, verbatim environments (elements that have the format='linespecific' notation attribute: address, literallayout, programlisting, screen, synopsis) that specify line numbering will have, surprise, line numbers.

Name

linenumbering.separator — Specify a separator between line numbers and lines

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="linenumbering.separator" select="' '"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The separator is inserted between line numbers and lines in the verbatim environment.

Name

linenumbering.width — Indicates the width of line numbers

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="linenumbering.width" select="'3'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If line numbering is enabled, line numbers will appear right justified in a field "width" characters wide.

Name

tablecolumns.extension — Enable the table columns extension function

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="tablecolumns.extension" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

The table columns extension function adjusts the widths of table columns in the HTML result to more accurately reflect the specifications in the CALS table.

Name

textinsert.extension — Enable the textinsert extension element

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="textinsert.extension" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The textinsert extension element inserts the contents of a a file into the result tree (as text).

Name

textdata.default.encoding — Default encoding of external text files which are included using textdata element

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="textdata.default.encoding" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Default encoding of external text files which are included using textdata element. This value is used only when you do not specify encoding by appropriate attribute directly on textdata. Default encoding (empty string) is interpreted as system default encoding.

Name

graphicsize.extension — Enable the getWidth()/getDepth() extension functions

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="graphicsize.extension" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero (and if *`use.extensions`* is non-zero and if you're using a processor that supports extension functions), the `getWidth` and `getDepth` functions will be used to extract image sizes from graphics.

Name

graphicsize.use.img.src.path — Prepend *`img.src.path`* before filenames passed to extension functions

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="graphicsize.use.img.src.path" select="0"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

If non-zero *img.src.path* parameter will be appended before filenames passed to extension functions for measuring image dimensions.

Name

use.extensions — Enable extensions

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="use.extensions" select="'0'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, extensions may be used. Each extension is further controlled by its own parameter. But if *use.extensions* is zero, no extensions will be used.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Automatic labelling

Name

chapter.autolabel — Specifies the labeling format for Chapter titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="chapter.autolabel" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If zero, then chapters will not be numbered. Otherwise chapters will be numbered, using the parameter value as the number format if the value matches one of the following:

1 or arabic
: Arabic numeration (1, 2, 3 ...).

A or upperalpha
: Uppercase letter numeration (A, B, C ...).

a or loweralpha
: Lowercase letter numeration (a, b, c ...).

I or upperroman
: Uppercase roman numeration (I, II, III ...).

i or lowerroman
: Lowercase roman letter numeration (i, ii, iii ...).

Any nonzero value other than the above will generate the default number format (arabic).

Name

appendix.autolabel — Specifies the labeling format for Appendix titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="appendix.autolabel" select="'A'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If zero, then appendices will not be numbered. Otherwise appendices will be numbered, using the parameter value as the number format if the value matches one of the following:

1 or arabic
: Arabic numeration (1, 2, 3 ...).

A or upperalpha
: Uppercase letter numeration (A, B, C ...).

a or loweralpha
: Lowercase letter numeration (a, b, c ...).

I or upperroman
: Uppercase roman numeration (I, II, III ...).

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

i or lowerroman
: Lowercase roman letter numeration (i, ii, iii ...).

Any nonzero value other than the above will generate the default number format (upperalpha).

Name

part.autolabel — Specifies the labeling format for Part titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="part.autolabel" select="'I'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If zero, then parts will not be numbered. Otherwise parts will be numbered, using the parameter value as the number format if the value matches one of the following:

1 or arabic
: Arabic numeration (1, 2, 3 ...).

A or upperalpha
: Uppercase letter numeration (A, B, C ...).

a or loweralpha
: Lowercase letter numeration (a, b, c ...).

I or upperroman
: Uppercase roman numeration (I, II, III ...).

i or lowerroman
: Lowercase roman letter numeration (i, ii, iii ...).

Any nonzero value other than the above will generate the default number format (upperroman).

Name

reference.autolabel — Specifies the labeling format for Reference titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="reference.autolabel" select="'I'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If zero, then references will not be numbered. Otherwise references will be numbered, using the parameter value as the number format if the value matches one of the following:

1 or arabic
: Arabic numeration (1, 2, 3 ...).

A or upperalpha
: Uppercase letter numeration (A, B, C ...).

a or loweralpha
: Lowercase letter numeration (a, b, c ...).

I or upperroman
: Uppercase roman numeration (I, II, III ...).

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

i or lowerroman
: Lowercase roman letter numeration (i, ii, iii ...).

Any nonzero value other than the above will generate the default number format (upperroman).

Name

preface.autolabel — Specifices the labeling format for Preface titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="preface.autolabel" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If zero (default), then prefaces will not be numbered. Otherwise prefaces will be numbered, using the parameter value as the number format if the value matches one of the following:

1 or arabic
: Arabic numeration (1, 2, 3 ...).

A or upperalpha
: Uppercase letter numeration (A, B, C ...).

a or loweralpha
: Lowercase letter numeration (a, b, c ...).

I or upperroman
: Uppercase roman numeration (I, II, III ...).

i or lowerroman
: Lowercase roman letter numeration (i, ii, iii ...).

Any nonzero value other than the above will generate the default number format (arabic).

Name

qandadiv.autolabel — Are divisions in QAndASets enumerated?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="qandadiv.autolabel" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), unlabeled qandadivs will be enumerated.

Name

section.autolabel — Are sections enumerated?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="section.autolabel" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), unlabeled sections will be enumerated.

Name

section.autolabel.max.depth — The deepest level of sections that are numbered.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="section.autolabel.max.depth" select="8"></xsl:param>
```

Description

When section numbering is turned on by the `section.autolabel` parameter, then this parameter controls the depth of section nesting that is numbered. Sections nested to a level deeper than this value will not be numbered.

Name

section.label.includes.component.label — Do section labels include the component label?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="section.label.includes.component.label" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), section labels are prefixed with the label of the component that contains them.

Name

label.from.part — Renumber chapters in each part?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="label.from.part" select="'0'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If *`label.from.part`* is non-zero, components (`chapter`s, `appendix`es, etc.) will be numbered from 1 in each `part`. Otherwise, they will be numbered monotonically throughout each `book`.

Name

component.label.includes.part.label — Do component labels include the part label?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="component.label.includes.part.label" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), number labels for chapters, appendices, and other component elements are prefixed with the label of the part element that contains them. So you might see Chapter II.3 instead of Chapter 3. Also, the labels for formal elements such as table and figure will include the part label. If there is no part element container, then no prefix is generated.

This feature is most useful when the `label.from.part` parameter is turned on. In that case, there would be more than one chapter “1”, and the extra part label prefix will identify each chapter unambiguously.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

HTML

Name

html.base — An HTML base URI

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="html.base"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If html.base is set, it is used for the BASE element in the HEAD of the HTML documents. This is useful for dynamically served HTML where the base URI needs to be shifted.

Name

html.stylesheet.type — The type of the stylesheet used in the generated HTML

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="html.stylesheet.type">text/css</xsl:param>
```

Description

The type of the stylesheet to place in the HTML `link` tag.

Name

html.stylesheet — Name of the stylesheet(s) to use in the generated HTML

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="html.stylesheet" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The *`html.stylesheet`* parameter is either empty, indicating that no stylesheet `LINK` tag should be generated in the HTML output, or it is a list of one or more stylesheets.

Multiple stylesheets are space-delimited. If you need to reference a stylesheet URI that includes a space, encode it with `%20`. A seprate HTML `LINK` element will be generated for each stylesheet in the order they are listed in the parameter.

Name

css.decoration — Enable CSS decoration of elements

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="css.decoration" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If `css.decoration` is turned on, then HTML elements produced by the stylesheet may be decorated with STYLE attributes. For example, the LI tags produced for list items may include a fragment of CSS in the STYLE attribute which sets the CSS property "list-style-type".

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

spacing.paras — Insert additional <p> elements for spacing?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="spacing.paras" select="'0'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

When non-zero, additional, empty paragraphs are inserted in several contexts (for example, around informal figures), to create a more pleasing visual appearance in many browsers.

Name

emphasis.propagates.style — Pass emphasis role attribute through to HTML?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="emphasis.propagates.style" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true, the role attribute of `emphasis` elements will be passed through to the HTML as a class attribute on a `span` that surrounds the emphasis.

Name

para.propagates.style — Pass para role attribute through to HTML?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="para.propagates.style" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true, the role attribute of `para` elements will be passed through to the HTML as a class attribute on the `p` generated for the paragraph.

Name

phrase.propagates.style — Pass phrase role attribute through to HTML?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="phrase.propagates.style" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true, the role attribute of `phrase` elements will be passed through to the HTML as a class attribute on a `span` that surrounds the phrase.

Name

entry.propagates.style — Pass entry role attribute through to HTML?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="entry.propagates.style" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true, the role attribute of `entry` elements will be passed through to the HTML as a class attribute on the `td` or `th` generated for the table cell.

Name

html.longdesc — Should longdesc URIs be created?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="html.longdesc" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, HTML files will be created for the `longdesc` attribute. These files are created from the `textobject`s in `mediaobject`s and `inlinemediaobject`.

Name

html.longdesc.link — Should a link to the longdesc be included in the HTML?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="html.longdesc.link" select="$html.longdesc"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, links will be created to the HTML files created for the `longdesc` attribute. It makes no sense to turn enable this option without also enabling the *`$html.longdesc`* parameter.

The `longdesc.link` named template is called to construct the link.

Name

make.valid.html — Attempt to make sure the HTML output is valid HTML

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="make.valid.html" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If *`make.valid.html`* is true, the stylesheets take extra effort to ensure that the resulting HTML is valid. This may mean that some `para` tags are translated into HTML `div`s or that other substitutions occur.

This parameter is different from *`html.cleanup`* because it changes the resulting markup; it does not use extension functions to manipulate result-tree-fragments and is therefore applicable to any XSLT processor.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

html.cleanup — Attempt to clean up the resulting HTML?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="html.cleanup" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, and if the EXSLT[1] extensions are supported by your processor, the resulting HTML will be "cleaned up". This improves the chances that the resulting HTML will be valid. It may also improve the formatting of some elements.

This parameter is different from *make.valid.html* because it uses extension functions to manipulate result-tree-fragments.

Name

html.append — Specifies content to append to HTML output

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="html.append"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies content to append to the end of HTML files output by the `html/docbook.xsl` stylesheet, after the closing `<html>` tag. You probably don't want to set any value for this parameter; but if you do, the only value it should ever be set to is a newline character: `
` or `
`

Name

draft.mode — Select draft mode

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="draft.mode" select="'maybe'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Selects draft mode. If *draft.mode* is "`yes`", the entire document will be treated as a draft. If it is "`no`", the entire document will be treated as a final copy. If it is "`maybe`", individual sections will be treated as draft or final independently, depending on how their `status` attribute is set.

Name

draft.watermark.image — The URI of the image to be used for draft watermarks

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="draft.watermark.image" \
select="'http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/images/draft.png'"></xsl:param>
```

[1] http://www.exslt.org/

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

The image to be used for draft watermarks.

Name

generate.id.attributes

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="generate.id.attributes" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, the HTML stylesheet will generate ID attributes on containers. For example, the markup:

```
<section id="foo"><title>Some Title</title>
<para>Some para.</para>
</section>
```

might produce:

```
<div class="section" id="foo">
<h2>Some Title</h2>
<p>Some para.</p>
</div>
```

The alternative is to generate anchors:

```
<div class="section">
<h2><a name="foo"></a>Some Title</h2>
<p>Some para.</p>
</div>
```

Because the `name` attribute of the `a` element and the `id` attribute of other tags are both of type “ID”, producing both generates invalid documents.

As of version 1.50, you can use this switch to control which type of identifier is generated. For backwards-compatibility, generating `a` anchors is preferred.

Note: at present, this switch is incompletely implemented. Disabling ID attributes will suppress them, but enabling ID attributes will not suppress the anchors.

Name

generate.meta.abstract — Generate HTML `META` element from `abstract`?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="generate.meta.abstract" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, document abstracts will be reproduced in the HTML `HEAD` with `<meta name="description" content="...">`.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

XSLT Processing

Name

rootid — Specify the root element to format

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="rootid" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If *rootid* is specified, it must be the value of an ID that occurs in the document being formatted. The entire document will be loaded and parsed, but formatting will begin at the element identified, rather than at the root. For example, this allows you to process only chapter 4 of a book.

Because the entire document is available to the processor, automatic numbering, cross references, and other dependencies are correctly resolved.

Name

suppress.navigation — Disable header and footer navigation

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="suppress.navigation">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If `suppress.navigation` is turned on, header and footer navigation will be suppressed.

Name

suppress.header.navigation — Disable header navigation

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="suppress.header.navigation">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If `suppress.header.navigation` is turned on, header navigation will be suppressed.

Name

suppress.footer.navigation — Disable footer navigation

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="suppress.footer.navigation">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If `suppress.footer.navigation` is turned on, footer navigation will be suppressed.

Name

header.rule — Rule under headers?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="header.rule" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, a rule will be drawn below the page headers.

Name

footer.rule — Rule over footers?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="footer.rule" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, a rule will be drawn above the page footers.

Name

id.warnings — Should warnings be generated for titled elements without IDs?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="id.warnings" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, the stylesheet will issue a warning for any element (other than the root element) which has a title but does not have an ID.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Meta/*Info and Titlepages

Name

inherit.keywords — Inherit keywords from ancestor elements?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="inherit.keywords" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If *inherit.keywords* is non-zero, the keyword META for each HTML HEAD element will include all of the keywords from ancestral elements. Otherwise, only the keywords from the current section will be used.

Name

make.single.year.ranges — Print single-year ranges (e.g., 1998-1999)

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="make.single.year.ranges" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, year ranges that span a single year will be printed in range notation (1998-1999) instead of discrete notation (1998, 1999).

Name

make.year.ranges — Collate copyright years into ranges?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="make.year.ranges" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, copyright years will be collated into ranges.

Name

author.othername.in.middle — Is `othername` in `author` a middle name?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="author.othername.in.middle" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), the `othername` of an `author` appears between the `firstname` and `surname`. Otherwise, `othername` is suppressed.

Name

blurb.on.titlepage.enabled — Display personblurb and authorblurb on title pages?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="blurb.on.titlepage.enabled">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, output from `authorblurb` and `personblurb` elements is displayed on title pages. If zero (the default), output from those elements is suppressed on title pages (unless you are using a titlepage customization that causes them to be included).

Name

contrib.inline.enabled — Display contrib output inline?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="contrib.inline.enabled">1</xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero (the default), output of the `contrib` element is displayed as inline content rather than as block content.

Name

editedby.enabled — Display “Edited by” heading above editor name?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="editedby.enabled">1</xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero (the default), a localized **Edited by** heading is displayed above editor names in output of the `editor` element.

Name

othercredit.like.author.enabled — Display othercredit in same style as author?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="othercredit.like.author.enabled">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, output of the `othercredit` element on titlepages is displayed in the same style as `author` and `editor` output. If zero (the default), `othercredit` output is displayed using a style different than that of `author` and `editor`.

Name

generate.legalnotice.link — Write legalnotice to separate chunk and generate link?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="generate.legalnotice.link" select="0"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

If the value of *generate.legalnotice.link* is non-zero, the stylesheet:

- writes the contents of `legalnotice` to a separate HTML file
- inserts a hyperlink to the `legalnotice` file
- adds (in the HTML `head`) either a single `link` or element or multiple `link` elements (depending on the value of the *html.head.legalnotice.link.multiple* parameter), with the value or values derived from the *html.head.legalnotice.link.types* parameter

Otherwise, if *generate.legalnotice.link* is zero, `legalnotice` contents are rendered on the title page.

Name

generate.revhistory.link — Write revhistory to separate chunk and generate link?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="generate.revhistory.link" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, the contents of `revhistory` are written to a separate HTML file and a link to the file is generated. Otherwise, `revhistory` contents are rendered on the title page.

Name

html.head.legalnotice.link.types — Specifies link types for legalnotice link in html head

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="html.head.legalnotice.link.types">copyright</xsl:param>
```

Description

The value of *html.head.legalnotice.link.types* is a space-separated list of link types, as described in Section 6.12 of the HTML 4.01 specification[1]. If the value of the *generate.legalnotice.link* parameter is non-zero, then the stylesheet generates (in the `head` section of the HTML source) either a single HTML `link` element or, if the value of the *html.head.legalnotice.link.multiple* is non-zero, one `link` element for each link type specified. Each `link` has the following attributes:

- a `rel` attribute whose value is derived from the value of *html.head.legalnotice.link.types*
- an `href` attribute whose value is set to the URL of the file containing the `legalnotice`
- a `title` attribute whose value is set to the title of the corresponding `legalnotice` (or a title programatically determined by the stylesheet)

For example:

```
<link rel="license" href="ln-id2524073.html" title="Legal Notice">
```

[1] http://www.w3.org/TR/html401/types.html#type-links

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

About the default value

In an ideal world, the default value of *`html.head.legalnotice.link.types`* would probably be "`license`", since the content of the DocBook `legalnotice` is typically license information, not copyright information. However, the default value is "`copyright`" for pragmatic reasons: because that's among the set of "recognized link types" listed in Section 6.12 of the HTML 4.01 specification[2], and because certain browsers and browser extensions are preconfigured to recognize that value.

Name

html.head.legalnotice.link.multiple — Generate multiple link instances in html head for legalnotice?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="html.head.legalnotice.link.multiple" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If *`html.head.legalnotice.link.multiple`* is non-zero and the value of *`html.head.legalnotice.link.types`* contains multiple link types, then the stylesheet generates (in the `head` section of the HTML source) one `link` element for each link type specified. For example, if the value of *`html.head.legalnotice.link.types`* is "`copyright license`":

```
<link rel="copyright" href="ln-id2524073.html" title="Legal Notice">
<link rel="license" href="ln-id2524073.html" title="Legal Notice">
```

Otherwise, the stylesheet generates generates a single `link` instance; for example:

```
<link rel="copyright license" href="ln-id2524073.html" title="Legal Notice">
```

[2] http://www.w3.org/TR/html401/types.html#type-links

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Reference Pages

Name

funcsynopsis.decoration — Decorate elements of a FuncSynopsis?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="funcsynopsis.decoration" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), elements of the FuncSynopsis will be decorated (e.g. bold or italic). The decoration is controlled by functions that can be redefined in a customization layer.

Name

funcsynopsis.style — What style of 'FuncSynopsis' should be generated?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="funcsynopsis.style">kr</xsl:param>
```

Description

If `funcsynopsis.style` is `ansi`, ANSI-style function synopses are generated for a `funcsynopsis`, otherwise K&R-style function synopses are generated.

Name

funcsynopsis.tabular.threshold — Width beyond which a tabular presentation will be used

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="funcsynopsis.tabular.threshold" select="40"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If *`funcsynopsis.tabular.threshold`* is greater than zero then if a `funcprototype` is wider than the threshold value, it will be presented in a table.

Name

function.parens — Generate parens after a function?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="function.parens">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If not 0, the formatting of a `<function>` element will include generated parenthesis.

Name

refentry.generate.name — Output NAME header before 'RefName'(s)?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.generate.name" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), a "NAME" section title is output before the list of 'RefName's. This parameter and *refentry.generate.title* are mutually exclusive. This means that if you change this parameter to zero, you should set *refentry.generate.title* to 1 unless you want get quite strange output.

Name

refentry.generate.title — Output title before 'RefName'(s)?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.generate.title" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), the reference page title or first name is output before the list of 'RefName's. This parameter and *refentry.generate.name* are mutually exclusive. This means that if you change this parameter to 1, you should set *refentry.generate.name* to 0 unless you want get quite strange output.

Name

refentry.xref.manvolnum — Output `manvolnum` as part of `refentry` cross-reference?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.xref.manvolnum" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

if true (non-zero), the `manvolnum` is used when cross-referencing `refentry`s, either with `xref` or `citerefentry`.

Name

citerefentry.link — Generate URL links when cross-referencing RefEntrys?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="citerefentry.link" select="'0'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true, a web link will be generated, presumably to an online man->HTML gateway. The text of the link is generated by the generate.citerefentry.link template.

Name

refentry.separator — Generate a separator between consecutive RefEntry elements?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.separator" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

If true, a separator will be generated between consecutive reference pages.

Name

refclass.suppress — Suppress display of refclass contents?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refclass.suppress" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *`refclass.suppress`* is non-zero, then display of `refclass` contents is suppressed in output.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Tables

Name

default.table.width — The default width of tables

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="default.table.width" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If specified, this value will be used for the WIDTH attribute on tables that do not specify an alternate width (with the dbhtml processing instruction).

Name

nominal.table.width — The (absolute) nominal width of tables

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="nominal.table.width" select="'6in'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

In order to convert CALS column widths into HTML column widths, it is sometimes necessary to have an absolute table width to use for conversion of mixed absolute and relative widths. This value must be an absolute length (not a percentag).

Name

table.borders.with.css — Use CSS to specify table, row, and cell borders?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.borders.with.css" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), CSS will be used to draw table borders.

Name

table.cell.border.style

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.cell.border.style" select="'solid'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

table.cell.border.thickness

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.cell.border.thickness" select="'0.5pt'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

table.cell.border.color

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.cell.border.color" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

table.frame.border.style

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.frame.border.style" select="'solid'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

table.frame.border.thickness — Specifies the thickness of the frame border

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.frame.border.thickness" select="'0.5pt'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the thickness of the border on the table's frame.

Name

table.frame.border.color

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.frame.border.color" select="''"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

FIXME:

Name

default.table.frame — The default framing of tables

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="default.table.frame" select="'all'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This value will be used when there is no frame attribute on the table.

Name

html.cellspacing — Default value for cellspacing in HTML tables

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="html.cellspacing" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If specified, this value will be used as the default cellspacing value in HTML tables.

Name

html.cellpadding — Default value for cellpadding in HTML tables

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="html.cellpadding" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If specified, this value will be used as the default cellpadding value in HTML tables.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

QAndASet

Name

qanda.defaultlabel — Sets the default for defaultlabel on QandASet.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="qanda.defaultlabel">number</xsl:param>
```

Description

If no defaultlabel attribute is specified on a QandASet, this value is used. It must be one of the legal values for the defaultlabel attribute.

Name

qanda.inherit.numeration — Does enumeration of QandASet components inherit the numeration of parent elements?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="qanda.inherit.numeration" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), numbered QandADiv elements and Questions and Answers inherit the numeration of the ancestors of the QandASet.

Name

qanda.in.toc — Should qandaentry questions appear in the document table of contents?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="qanda.in.toc" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), then the generated table of contents for a document will include `qandaset` titles, `qandadiv` titles, and `question` elements. The default value (zero) excludes them from the TOC.

This parameter does not affect any tables of contents that may be generated inside a qandaset or qandadiv.

Name

qanda.nested.in.toc — Should nested answer/qandaentry instances appear in TOC?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="qanda.nested.in.toc" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), instances of `qandaentry` that are children of `answer` elements are shown in the TOC.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Linking

Name

target.database.document — Name of master database file for resolving olinks

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="target.database.document" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

To resolve olinks between documents, the stylesheets use a master database document that identifies the target datafiles for all the documents within the scope of the olinks. This parameter value is the URI of the master document to be read during processing to resolve olinks. The default value is `olinkdb.xml`.

The data structure of the file is defined in the `targetdatabase.dtd` DTD. The database file provides the high level elements to record the identifiers, locations, and relationships of documents. The cross reference data for individual documents is generally pulled into the database using system entity references or XIncludes. See also *`targets.filename`*.

Name

targets.filename — Name of cross reference targets data file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="targets.filename" select="'target.db'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

In order to resolve olinks efficiently, the stylesheets can generate an external data file containing information about all potential cross reference endpoints in a document. This parameter lets you change the name of the generated file from the default name `target.db`. The name must agree with that used in the target database used to resolve olinks during processing. See also *`target.database.document`*.

Name

olink.base.uri — Base URI used in olink hrefs

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="olink.base.uri" select="''"></xsl:param> \
```

Description

When cross reference data is collected for resolving olinks, it may be necessary to prepend a base URI to each target's href. This parameter lets you set that base URI when cross reference data is collected. This feature is needed when you want to link to a document that is processed without chunking. The output filename for such a document is not known to the XSL stylesheet; the only target information consists of fragment identifiers such as `#idref`. To enable the resolution of olinks between documents, you should pass the name of the HTML output file as the value of this parameter. Then the hrefs recorded in the cross reference data collection look like `outfile.html#idref`, which can be reached as links from other documents.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

use.local.olink.style — Process olinks using xref style of current document

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="use.local.olink.style" select="0"></xsl:param> \
```

Description

When cross reference data is collected for use by olinks, the data for each potential target includes one field containing a completely assembled cross reference string, as if it were an xref generated in that document. Other fields record the separate title, number, and element name of each target. When an olink is formed to a target from another document, the olink resolves to that preassembled string by default. If the *use.local.olink.style* parameter is set to non-zero, then instead the cross reference string is formed again from the target title, number, and element name, using the stylesheet processing the targeting document. Then olinks will match the xref style in the targeting document rather than in the target document. If both documents are processed with the same stylesheet, then the results will be the same.

Name

current.docid — targetdoc identifier for the document being processed

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="current.docid" select="''"></xsl:param> \
```

Description

When olinks between documents are resolved for HTML output, the stylesheet can compute the relative path between the current document and the target document. The stylesheet needs to know the `targetdoc` identifiers for both documents, as they appear in the *target.database.document* database file. This parameter passes to the stylesheet the targetdoc identifier of the current document, since that identifier does not appear in the document itself.

This parameter can also be used for print output. If an olink's `targetdoc` id differs from the `current.docid`, then the stylesheet can append the target document's title to the generated olink text. That identifies to the reader that the link is to a different document, not the current document. See also *olink.doctitle* to enable that feature.

Name

olink.doctitle — show the document title for external olinks?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="olink.doctitle" select="'no'"></xsl:param> \
```

Description

When olinks between documents are resolved, the generated text may not make it clear that the reference is to another document. It is possible for the stylesheets to append the other document's title to external olinks. For this to happen, two parameters must be set.

- This *olink.doctitle* parameter should be set to either `yes` or `maybe` to enable this feature.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

- And you should also set the *current.docid* parameter to the document id for the document currently being processed for output.

Then if an olink's targetdoc id differs from the current.docid value, the stylesheet knows that it is a reference to another document and can append the target document's title to the generated olink text.

The text for the target document's title is copied from the olink database from the ttl element of the top-level div for that document. If that ttl element is missing or empty, no title is output.

The supported values for *olink.doctitle* are:

yes
: Always insert the title to the target document if it is not the current document.

no
: Never insert the title to the target document, even if requested in an xrefstyle attribute.

maybe
: Only insert the title to the target document, if requested in an xrefstyle attribute.

An xrefstyle attribute may override the global setting for individual olinks. The following values are supported in an xrefstyle attribute using the select: syntax:

docname
: Insert the target document name for this olink using the docname gentext template, but only if the value of *olink.doctitle* is not no.

docnamelong
: Insert the target document name for this olink using the docnamelong gentext template, but only if the value of *olink.doctitle* is not no.

nodocname
: Omit the target document name even if the value of *olink.doctitle* is yes.

Another way of inserting the target document name for a single olink is to employ an xrefstyle attribute using the template: syntax. The %o placeholder (the letter o, not zero) in such a template will be filled in with the target document's title when it is processed. This will occur regardless of the value of *olink.doctitle*.

Note that prior to version 1.66 of the XSL stylesheets, the allowed values for this parameter were 0 and 1. Those values are still supported and mapped to 'no' and 'yes', respectively.

Name

olink.debug — Turn on debugging messages for olinks

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="olink.debug" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, then each olink will generate several messages about how it is being resolved during processing. This is useful when an olink does not resolve properly and the standard error messages are not sufficient to find the problem.

You may need to read through the olink XSL templates to understand the context for some of the debug messages.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

olink.properties — Properties associated with the cross-reference text of an olink.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="olink.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="show-destination">replace</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

This attribute set is applied to the `fo:basic-link` element of an olink. It is not applied to the optional page number or optional title of the external document.

Name

olink.lang.fallback.sequence — look up translated documents if olink not found?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="olink.lang.fallback.sequence" select="''"></xsl:param> \
```

Description

This parameter defines a list of lang values to search among to resolve olinks.

Normally an olink tries to resolve to a document in the same language as the olink itself. The language of an olink is determined by its nearest ancestor element with a `lang` attribute, otherwise the value of the *`l10n.gentext.default.lang`* parameter.

An olink database can contain target data for the same document in multiple languages. Each set of data has the same value for the `targetdoc` attribute in the `document` element in the database, but with a different `lang` attribute value.

When an olink is being resolved, the target is first sought in the document with the same language as the olink. If no match is found there, then this parameter is consulted for additional languages to try.

The *`olink.lang.fallback.sequence`* must be a whitespace separated list of lang values to try. The first one with a match in the olink database is used. The default value is empty.

For example, a document might be written in German and contain an olink with `targetdoc="adminguide"`. When the document is processed, the processor first looks for a target dataset in the olink database starting with:

```
<document targetdoc="adminguide" lang="de">.
```

If there is no such element, then the *`olink.lang.fallback.sequence`* parameter is consulted. If its value is, for example, “fr en”, then the processor next looks for `targetdoc="adminguide" lang="fr"`, and then for `targetdoc="adminguide" lang="en"`. If there is still no match, it looks for `targetdoc="adminguide"` with no lang attribute.

This parameter is useful when a set of documents is only partially translated, or is in the process of being translated. If a target of an olink has not yet been translated, then this parameter permits the processor to look for the document in other languages. This assumes the reader would rather have a link to a document in a different language than to have a broken link.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

insert.olink.page.number — Turns page numbers in olinks on and off

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="insert.olink.page.number">no</xsl:param>
```

Description

The value of this parameter determines if cross references made between documents with `olink` will include page number citations. In most cases this is only applicable to references in printed output.

The parameter has three possible values.

no
: No page number references will be generated for olinks.

yes
: Page number references will be generated for all `olink` references. The style of page reference may be changed if an `xrefstyle` attribute is used.

maybe
: Page number references will not be generated for an `olink` element unless it has an `xrefstyle` attribute whose value specifies a page reference.

Olinks that point to targets within the same document are treated as `xref`s, and controlled by the *`insert.xref.page.number`* parameter.

Page number references for olinks to external documents can only be inserted if the information exists in the olink database. This means each olink target element (`div` or `obj`) must have a `page` attribute whose value is its page number in the target document. The XSL stylesheets are not able to extract that information during processing because pages have not yet been created in XSLT transformation. Only the XSL-FO processor knows what page each element is placed on. Therefore some postprocessing must take place to populate page numbers in the olink database.

Name

insert.olink.pdf.frag — Add fragment identifiers for links into PDF files

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="insert.olink.pdf.frag" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The value of this parameter determines whether the cross reference URIs to PDF documents made with `olink` will include fragment identifiers.

When forming a URI to link to a PDF document, a fragment identifier (typically a '#' followed by an id value) appended to the PDF filename can be used by the PDF viewer to open the PDF file to a location within the document instead of the first page. However, not all PDF files have id values embedded in them, and not all PDF viewers can handle fragment identifiers.

If *`insert.olink.pdf.frag`* is set to a non-zero value, then any olink targeting a PDF file will have the fragment identifier appended to the URI. The URI is formed by concatenating the value of the *`olink.base.uri`* parameter, the value of the `baseuri` attribute from the `document` element

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

in the olink database with the matching `targetdoc` value, and the value of the `href` attribute for the targeted element in the olink database. The `href` attribute contains the fragment identifier.

If *`insert.olink.pdf.frag`* is set to zero (the default value), then the `href` attribute from the olink database is not appended to PDF olinks, so the fragment identifier is left off. A PDF olink is any olink for which the `baseuri` attribute from the matching `document` element in the olink database ends with '.pdf'. Any other olinks will still have the fragment identifier added.

Name

prefer.internal.olink — Prefer a local olink reference to an external reference

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="prefer.internal.olink" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you are re-using XML content modules in multiple documents, you may want to redirect some of your olinks. This parameter permits you to redirect an olink to the current document.

For example: you are writing documentation for a product, which includes 3 manuals: a little installation booklet (booklet.xml), a user guide (user.xml), and a reference manual (reference.xml). All 3 documents begin with the same introduction section (intro.xml) that contains a reference to the customization section (custom.xml) which is included in both user.xml and reference.xml documents.

How do you write the link to custom.xml in intro.xml so that it is interpreted correctly in all 3 documents?

- If you use xref, it will fail in user.xml.
- If you use olink (pointing to reference.xml), the reference in user.xml will point to the customization section of the reference manual, while it is actually available in user.xml.

If you set the *`prefer.internal.olink`* parameter to a non-zero value, then the processor will first look in the olink database for the olink's `targetptr` attribute value in document matching the *`current.docid`* parameter value. If it isn't found there, then it tries the document in the database with the `targetdoc` value that matches the olink's `targetdoc` attribute.

This feature permits an olink reference to resolve to the current document if there is an element with an id matching the olink's `targetptr` value. The current document's olink data must be included in the target database for this to work.

Caution

There is a potential for incorrect links if the same `id` attribute value is used for different content in different documents. Some of your olinks may be redirected to the current document when they shouldn't be. It is not possible to control individual olink instances.

Name

link.mailto.url — Mailto URL for the LINK REL=made HTML HEAD element

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="link.mailto.url"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

If not the empty string, this address will be used for the REL=made `LINK` element in the HTML `HEAD`.

Name

ulink.target — The HTML anchor target for ULinks

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="ulink.target" select="'_top'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If *`ulink.target`* is set, its value will be used for the `target` attribute on anchors generated for `ulinks`.

Name

olink.fragid — Names the fragment identifier portion of an OLink resolver query

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="olink.fragid" select="'fragid='"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

olink.outline.ext — The extension of OLink outline files

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="olink.outline.ext" select="'.olink'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

olink.pubid — Names the public identifier portion of an OLink resolver query

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="olink.pubid" select="'pubid='"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

olink.sysid — Names the system identifier portion of an OLink resolver query

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="olink.sysid" select="'sysid='"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

FIXME:

Name

olink.resolver — The root name of the OLink resolver (usually a script)

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="olink.resolver" select="'/cgi-bin/olink'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Cross References

Name

collect.xref.targets — Controls whether cross reference data is collected

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="collect.xref.targets" select="'no'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

In order to resolve olinks efficiently, the stylesheets can generate an external data file containing information about all potential cross reference endpoints in a document. This parameter determines whether the collection process is run when the document is processed by the stylesheet. The default value is `no`, which means the data file is not generated during processing. The other choices are `yes`, which means the data file is created and the document is processed for output, and `only`, which means the data file is created but the document is not processed for output. See also *`targets.filename`*.

Name

insert.xref.page.number — Turns page numbers in xrefs on and off

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="insert.xref.page.number">no</xsl:param>
```

Description

The value of this parameter determines if cross references (`xref`s) in printed output will include page number citations. It has three possible values.

no
: No page number references will be generated.

yes
: Page number references will be generated for all `xref` elements. The style of page reference may be changed if an `xrefstyle` attribute is used.

maybe
: Page number references will not be generated for an `xref` element unless it has an `xrefstyle` attribute whose value specifies a page reference.

Name

use.role.as.xrefstyle — Use `role` attribute for `xrefstyle` on `xref`?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="use.role.as.xrefstyle" select="1"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

If non-zero, the `role` attribute on `xref` will be used to select the cross reference style. The DocBook Technical Committee[1] recently added an `xrefstyle` attribute for this purpose. If the `xrefstyle` attribute is present, `role` will be ignored, regardless of this setting.

Until an official DocBook release that includes the new attribute, this flag allows `role` to serve that purpose.

Example

The following small stylesheet shows how to configure the stylesheets to make use of the cross reference style:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
                version="1.0">

<xsl:import href="../xsl/html/docbook.xsl"/>

<xsl:output method="html"/>

<xsl:param name="local.l10n.xml" select="document('')"/>
<l:i18n xmlns:l="http://docbook.sourceforge.net/xmlns/l10n/1.0">
  <l:l10n xmlns:l="http://docbook.sourceforge.net/xmlns/l10n/1.0" language="en">
   <l:context name="xref">
      <l:template name="chapter" style="title" text="Chapter %n, %t"/>
      <l:template name="chapter" text="Chapter %n"/>
    </l:context>
  </l:l10n>
</l:i18n>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

With this stylesheet, the cross references in the following document:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE book PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.2//EN"
                  "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.2/docbookx.dtd">
<book id="book"><title>Book</title>

<preface>
<title>Preface</title>

<para>Normal: <xref linkend="ch1"/>.</para>
<para>Title: <xref xrefstyle="title" linkend="ch1"/>.</para>

</preface>

<chapter id="ch1">
<title>First Chapter</title>

<para>Irrelevant.</para>

</chapter>
</book>
```

will appear as:

Normal: Chapter 1.

Title: Chapter 1, *First Chapter*.

[1] http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

xref.with.number.and.title — Use number and title in cross references

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="xref.with.number.and.title" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

xref.label-page.separator — Punctuation or space separating label from page number in xref

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="xref.label-page.separator"><xsl:text> </xsl:text></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter allows you to control the punctuation of certain types of generated cross reference text. When cross reference text is generated for an `xref` or `olink` element using an `xrefstyle` attribute that makes use of the `select:` feature, and the selected components include both label and page but no title, then the value of this parameter is inserted between label and page number in the output. If a title is included, then other separators are used.

Name

xref.label-title.separator — Punctuation or space separating label from title in xref

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="xref.label-title.separator">: </xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter allows you to control the punctuation of certain types of generated cross reference text. When cross reference text is generated for an `xref` or `olink` element using an `xrefstyle` attribute that makes use of the `select:` feature, and the selected components include both label and title, then the value of this parameter is inserted between label and title in the output.

Name

xref.title-page.separator — Punctuation or space separating title from page number in xref

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="xref.title-page.separator"><xsl:text> </xsl:text></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter allows you to control the punctuation of certain types of generated cross reference text. When cross reference text is generated for an `xref` or `olink` element using an `xrefstyle` attribute that makes use of the `select:` feature, and the selected components include both title and page number, then the value of this parameter is inserted between title and page number in the output.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Lists

Name

segmentedlist.as.table — Format segmented lists as tables?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="segmentedlist.as.table" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, `segmentedlist`s will be formatted as tables.

Name

variablelist.as.table — Format `variablelist`s as tables?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="variablelist.as.table" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, `variablelist`s will be formatted as tables. A processing instruction exists to specify a particualar width for the column containing the `term`s: `<?dbhtml term-width=".25in">`

You can override this setting with a processing instruction as the child of `variablelist`: `<?dbhtml list-presentation="table">` or `<?dbhtml list-presentation="list">`.

This parameter only applys to the HTML transformations. In the FO case, proper list markup is robust enough to handle the formatting. But see also *`variablelist.as.blocks`*.

```
<variablelist>
      <?dbhtml list-presentation="table"?>
      <?dbhtml term-width="1.5in"?>
      <?dbfo list-presentation="list"?>
      <?dbfo term-width="1in"?>
      <varlistentry>
        <term>list</term>
        <listitem>
              <para>
                Formatted as a table even if variablelist.as.table is set to 0.
              </para>
        </listitem>
      </varlistentry>
</variablelist>
```

Name

variablelist.term.separator — Text to separate `term`s within a multi-term `varlistentry`

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="variablelist.term.separator">, </xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

When a `varlistentry` contains multiple `term` elements, the string specified in the value of the *`variablelist.term.separator`* parameter is placed after each `term` except the last.

Note

To generate a line break between multiple `term`s in a `varlistentry`, set a non-zero value for the *`variablelist.term.break.after`* parameter. If you do so, you may also want to set the value of the *`variablelist.term.separator`* parameter to an empty string (to suppress rendering of the default comma and space after each `term`).

Name

variablelist.term.break.after — Generate line break after each `term` within a multi-term `varlistentry`?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="variablelist.term.break.after">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

Set a non-zero value for the *`variablelist.term.break.after`* parameter to generate a line break between `term`s in a multi-term `varlistentry`.

Note

If you set a non-zero value for *`variablelist.term.break.after`*, you may also want to set the value of the *`variablelist.term.separator`* parameter to an empty string (to suppress rendering of the default comma and space after each `term`).

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Bibliography

Name

biblioentry.item.separator — Text to separate bibliography entries

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="biblioentry.item.separator">. </xsl:param>
```

Description

Text to separate bibliography entries

Name

bibliography.collection — Name of the bibliography collection file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="bibliography.collection" \
select="'http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/bibliography/bibliography.xml'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Maintaining bibliography entries across a set of documents is tedious, time consuming, and error prone. It makes much more sense, usually, to store all of the bibliography entries in a single place and simply "extract" the ones you need in each document.

That's the purpose of the *`bibliography.collection`* parameter. To setup a global bibliography "database", follow these steps:

First, create a stand-alone bibliography document that contains all of the documents that you wish to reference. Make sure that each bibliography entry (whether you use `biblioentry` or `bibliomixed`) has an ID.

My global bibliography, `~/bibliography.xml` begins like this:

```
<!DOCTYPE bibliography
  PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
  "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<bibliography><title>References</title>

<bibliomixed id="xml-rec"><abbrev>XML 1.0</abbrev>Tim Bray,
Jean Paoli, C. M. Sperberg-McQueen, and Eve Maler, editors.
<citetitle><ulink url="http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml">Extensible Markup
Language (XML) 1.0 Second Edition</ulink></citetitle>.
World Wide Web Consortium, 2000.
</bibliomixed>

<bibliomixed id="xml-names"><abbrev>Namespaces</abbrev>Tim Bray,
Dave Hollander,
and Andrew Layman, editors.
<citetitle><ulink url="http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml-names/">Namespaces in
XML</ulink></citetitle>.
World Wide Web Consortium, 1999.
</bibliomixed>

<!-- ... -->
</bibliography>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

When you create a bibliography in your document, simply provide *empty* `bibliomixed` entries for each document that you wish to cite. Make sure that these elements have the same ID as the corresponding “real” entry in your global bibliography.

For example:

```
<bibliography><title>Bibliography</title>

<bibliomixed id="xml-rec"/>
<bibliomixed id="xml-names"/>
<bibliomixed id="DKnuth86">Donald E. Knuth. <citetitle>Computers and
Typesetting: Volume B, TeX: The Program</citetitle>. Addison-Wesley,
1986.  ISBN 0-201-13437-3.
</bibliomixed>
<bibliomixed id="relaxng"/>

</bibliography>
```

Note that it's perfectly acceptable to mix entries from your global bibliography with “normal” entries. You can use `xref` or other elements to cross-reference your bibliography entries in exactly the same way you do now.

Finally, when you are ready to format your document, simply set the *`bibliography.collection`* parameter (in either a customization layer or directly through your processor's interface) to point to your global bibliography.

The stylesheets will format the bibliography in your document as if all of the entries referenced appeared there literally.

Name

bibliography.numbered — Should bibliography entries be numbered?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="bibliography.numbered" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero bibliography entries will be numbered

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Glossary

Name

glossterm.auto.link — Generate links from glossterm to glossentry automaticaly?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="glossterm.auto.link" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true, a link will be automatically created from glossterm to glossentry for that glossary term. This is usefull when your glossterm names are consistent and you don't want to add links manually.

If there is `linkend` on `glossterm` then is used instead of autogeneration of link.

Name

firstterm.only.link — Does automatic glossterm linking only apply to firstterms?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="firstterm.only.link" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true, only `firstterm`s will be automatically linked to the glossary. If glossary linking is not enabled, this parameter has no effect.

Name

glossary.collection — Name of the glossary collection file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="glossary.collection" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Glossaries maintained independently across a set of documents are likely to become inconsistent unless considerable effort is expended to keep them in sync. It makes much more sense, usually, to store all of the glossary entries in a single place and simply “extract” the ones you need in each document.

That's the purpose of the *`glossary.collection`* parameter. To setup a global glossary “database”, follow these steps:

Setting Up the Glossary Database

First, create a stand-alone glossary document that contains all of the entries that you wish to reference. Make sure that each glossary entry has an ID.

Here's an example glossary:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE glossary
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
  PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
  "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<glossary>
<glossaryinfo>
<editor><firstname>Eric</firstname><surname>Raymond</surname></editor>
<title>Jargon File 4.2.3 (abridged)</title>
<releaseinfo>Just some test data</releaseinfo>
</glossaryinfo>

<glossdiv><title>0</title>

<glossentry>
<glossterm>0</glossterm>
<glossdef>
<para>Numeric zero, as opposed to the letter `O' (the 15th letter of
the English alphabet). In their unmodified forms they look a lot
alike, and various kluges invented to make them visually distinct have
compounded the confusion. If your zero is center-dotted and letter-O
is not, or if letter-O looks almost rectangular but zero looks more
like an American football stood on end (or the reverse), you're
probably looking at a modern character display (though the dotted zero
seems to have originated as an option on IBM 3270 controllers). If
your zero is slashed but letter-O is not, you're probably looking at
an old-style ASCII graphic set descended from the default typewheel on
the venerable ASR-33 Teletype (Scandinavians, for whom /O is a letter,
curse this arrangement). (Interestingly, the slashed zero long
predates computers; Florian Cajori's monumental "A History of
Mathematical Notations" notes that it was used in the twelfth and
thirteenth centuries.) If letter-O has a slash across it and the zero
does not, your display is tuned for a very old convention used at IBM
and a few other early mainframe makers (Scandinavians curse <emphasis>this</emphasis>
arrangement even more, because it means two of their letters collide).
Some Burroughs/Unisys equipment displays a zero with a <emphasis>reversed</emphasis>
slash. Old CDC computers rendered letter O as an unbroken oval and 0
as an oval broken at upper right and lower left. And yet another
convention common on early line printers left zero unornamented but
added a tail or hook to the letter-O so that it resembled an inverted
Q or cursive capital letter-O (this was endorsed by a draft ANSI
standard for how to draw ASCII characters, but the final standard
changed the distinguisher to a tick-mark in the upper-left corner).
Are we sufficiently confused yet?</para>
</glossdef>
</glossentry>

<glossentry>
<glossterm>1TBS</glossterm>
<glossdef>
<para role="accidence">
<phrase role="pronounce"></phrase>
<phrase role="partsofspeach">n</phrase>
</para>
<para>The "One True Brace Style"</para>
<glossseealso>indent style</glossseealso>
</glossdef>
</glossentry>

<!-- ... -->

</glossdiv>

<!-- ... -->

</glossary>
```

Marking Up Glossary Terms

That takes care of the glossary database, now you have to get the entries into your document. Unlike bibliography entries, which can be empty, creating “placeholder” glossary entries would be very tedious. So instead, support for `glossary.collection` relies on implicit linking.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

In your source document, simply use `firstterm` and `glossterm` to identify the terms you wish to have included in the glossary. The stylesheets assume that you will either set the `baseform` attribute correctly, or that the content of the element exactly matches a term in your glossary.

If you're using a *`glossary.collection`*, don't make explicit links on the terms in your document.

So, in your document, you might write things like this:

```
<para>This is dummy text, without any real meaning.
The point is simply to reference glossary terms like <glossterm>0</glossterm>
and the <firstterm baseform="1TBS">One True Brace Style (1TBS)</firstterm>.
The <glossterm>1TBS</glossterm>, as you can probably imagine, is a nearly
religious issue.</para>
```

If you set the *`firstterm.only.link`* parameter, only the terms marked with `firstterm` will be links. Otherwise, all the terms will be linked.

Marking Up the Glossary

The glossary itself has to be identified for the stylesheets. For lack of a better choice, the `role` is used. To identify the glossary as the target for automatic processing, set the role to “`auto`”. The title of this glossary (and any other information from the `glossaryinfo` that's rendered by your stylesheet) will be displayed, but the entries will come from the database.

Unfortunately, the glossary can't be empty, so you must put in at least one `glossentry`. The content of this entry is irrelevant, it will not be rendered:

```
<glossary role="auto">
<glossentry>
<glossterm>Irrelevant</glossterm>
<glossdef>
<para>If you can see this, the document was processed incorrectly. Use
the <parameter>glossary.collection</parameter> parameter.</para>
</glossdef>
</glossentry>
</glossary>
```

What about glossary divisions? If your glossary database has glossary divisions *and* your automatic glossary contains at least one `glossdiv`, the automic glossary will have divisions. If the `glossdiv` is missing from either location, no divisions will be rendered.

Glossary entries (and divisions, if appropriate) in the glossary will occur in precisely the order they occur in your database.

Formatting the Document

Finally, when you are ready to format your document, simply set the *`glossary.collection`* parameter (in either a customization layer or directly through your processor's interface) to point to your global glossary.

The stylesheets will format the glossary in your document as if all of the entries implicilty referenced appeared there literally.

Limitations

Glossary cross-references *within the glossary* are not supported. For example, this *will not* work:

```
<glossentry>
<glossterm>gloss-1</glossterm>
<glossdef><para>A description that references <glossterm>gloss-2</glossterm>.</para>
<glossseealso>gloss-2</glossseealso>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
</glossdef>
</glossentry>
```

If you put glossary cross-references in your glossary that way, you'll get the cryptic error: `Warning: glossary.collection specified, but there are 0 automatic glossaries`.

Instead, you must do two things:

1. Markup your glossary using `glossseealso`:

```
<glossentry>
<glossterm>gloss-1</glossterm>
<glossdef><para>A description that references <glossterm>gloss-2</glossterm>.</para>
<glossseealso>gloss-2</glossseealso>
</glossdef>
</glossentry>
```

2. Make sure there is at least one `glossterm` reference to *gloss-2 in your document*. The easiest way to do that is probably within a `remark` in your automatic glossary:

```
<glossary role="auto">
<remark>Make sure there's a reference to <glossterm>gloss-2</glossterm>.</remark>
<glossentry>
<glossterm>Irrelevant</glossterm>
<glossdef>
<para>If you can see this, the document was processed incorrectly. Use
the <parameter>glossary.collection</parameter> parameter.</para>
</glossdef>
</glossentry>
</glossary>
```

Name

glossary.sort — Sort glossentry elements?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="glossary.sort" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, then the glossentry elements within a glossary, glossdiv, or glosslist are sorted on the glossterm, using the current lang setting. If zero (the default), then glossentry elements are not sorted and are presented in document order.

Name

glossentry.show.acronym — Display `glossentry` acronyms?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="glossentry.show.acronym" select="'no'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

A setting of “yes” means they should be displayed; “no” means they shouldn't. If “primary” is used, then they are shown as the primary text for the entry.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Note

This setting controls both `acronym` and `abbrev` elements in the `glossentry`.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Miscellaneous

Name

formal.procedures — Selects formal or informal procedures

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="formal.procedures" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Formal procedures are numbered and always have a title.

Name

formal.title.placement — Specifies where formal object titles should occur

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="formal.title.placement">
figure before
example before
equation before
table before
procedure before
task before
</xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies where formal object titles should occur. For each formal object type (`figure`, `example`, `equation`, `table`, and `procedure`) you can specify either the keyword “`before`” or “`after`”.

Name

runinhead.default.title.end.punct — Default punctuation character on a run-in-head

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="runinhead.default.title.end.punct" select="'.'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

runinhead.title.end.punct — Characters that count as punctuation on a run-in-head

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="runinhead.title.end.punct" select="'.!?:'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

show.comments — Display `comment` elements?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="show.comments">1</xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), comments will be displayed, otherwise they are suppressed. Comments here refers to the `comment` element, which will be renamed `remark` in DocBook V4.0, not XML comments (<-- like this -->) which are unavailable.

Name

show.revisionflag — Enable decoration of elements that have a revisionflag

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="show.revisionflag">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If `show.revisionflag` is turned on, then the stylesheets may produce additional markup designed to allow a CSS stylesheet to highlight elements that have specific revisionflag settings.

The markup inserted will be usually be either a or with an appropriate `class` attribute. (The value of the class attribute will be the same as the value of the revisionflag attribute). In some contexts, for example tables, where extra markup would be structurally illegal, the class attribute will be added to the appropriate container element.

In general, the stylesheets only test for revisionflag in contexts where an importing stylesheet would have to redefine whole templates. Most of the revisionflag processing is expected to be done by another stylesheet, for example `changebars.xsl`.

Name

shade.verbatim — Should verbatim environments be shaded?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="shade.verbatim" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

In the FO stylesheet, if this parameter is non-zero then the shade.verbatim.style properties will be applied to verbatim environments.

In the HTML stylesheet, this parameter is now deprecated. Use CSS instead.

Name

shade.verbatim.style — Properties that specify the style of shaded verbatim listings

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="shade.verbatim.style">
  <xsl:attribute name="border">0</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="bgcolor">#E0E0E0</xsl:attribute>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

punct.honorific — Punctuation after an honorific in a personal name.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="punct.honorific" select="'.'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter specifies the punctuation that should be added after an honorific in a personal name.

Name

tex.math.in.alt — TeX notation used for equations

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="tex.math.in.alt" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want type math directly in TeX notation in equations, this parameter specifies notation used. Currently are supported two values -- `plain` and `latex`. Empty value means that you are not using TeX math at all.

Preferred way for including TeX alternative of math is inside of `textobject` element. Eg.:

```
<inlineequation>
<inlinemediaobject>
<imageobject>
<imagedata fileref="eq1.gif"/>
</imageobject>
<textobject><phrase>E=mc squared</phrase></textobject>
<textobject role="tex"><phrase>E=mc^2</phrase></textobject>
</inlinemediaobject>
</inlineequation>
```

If you are using `graphic` element, you can store TeX inside `alt` element:

```
<inlineequation>
<alt role="tex">a^2+b^2=c^2</alt>
<graphic fileref="a2b2c2.gif"/>
</inlineequation>
```

If you want use this feature, you should process your FO with PassiveTeX, which only supports TeX math notation. When calling stylsheet, don't forget to specify also passivetex.extensions=1.

If you want equations in HTML, just process generated file `tex-math-equations.tex` by TeX or LaTeX. Then run dvi2bitmap program on result DVI file. You will get images for equations in your document.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

tex.math.file — Name of temporary file for generating images from equations

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="tex.math.file" select="'tex-math-equations.tex'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Name of auxiliary file for TeX equations. This file can be processed by dvi2bitmap to get bitmap versions of equations for HTML output.

Name

tex.math.delims — Should be equations outputed for processing by TeX automatically surrounded by math mode delimiters

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="tex.math.delims" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

For compatibility with DSSSL based DBTeXMath from Allin Cottrell you should set this parameter to 0.

Name

pixels.per.inch — How many pixels are there per inch?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="pixels.per.inch" select="90"></xsl:param>
```

Description

When lengths are converted to pixels, this value is used to determine the size of a pixel. The default value is taken from the XSL Recommendation[1].

Name

points.per.em — Specify the nominal size of an em-space in points

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="points.per.em" select="10"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

use.svg — Allow SVG in the result tree?

[1] http://www.w3.org/TR/xsl/slice5.html#pixels

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="use.svg" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, SVG will be considered an acceptable image format. SVG is passed through to the result tree, so correct rendering of the resulting diagram depends on the formatter (FO processor or web browser) that is used to process the output from the stylesheet.

Name

menuchoice.separator — Separator between items of a `menuchoice` other than `guimenuitem` and `guisubmenu`

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="menuchoice.separator" select="'+'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Separator used to connect items of a `menuchoice` other than `guimenuitem` and `guisubmenu`. The latter elements are linked with *`menuchoice.menu.separator`*.

Name

menuchoice.menu.separator — Separator between items of a `menuchoice` with `guimenuitem` or `guisubmenu`

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="menuchoice.menu.separator">   </xsl:param>
```

Description

Separator used to connect items of a `menuchoice` with `guimenuitem` or `guisubmenu`. Other elements are linked with *`menuchoice.separator`*.

The default value is →, which is the → (right arrow) character entity. The current FOP (0.20.5) requires setting the font-family explicitly.

The default value also includes spaces around the arrow, which will allow a line to break. Replace the spaces with   (nonbreaking space) if you don't want those spaces to break.

Name

default.float.class — Specifies the default float class

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="default.float.class">
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="contains($stylesheet.result.type,'html')">left</xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>before</xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

FIXME:

Name

footnote.number.format — Identifies the format used for footnote numbers

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="footnote.number.format" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The *footnote.number.format* specifies the format to use for footnote numeration (1, i, I, a, or A).

Name

table.footnote.number.format — Identifies the format used for footnote numbers in tables

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.footnote.number.format" select="'a'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The *table.footnote.number.format* specifies the format to use for footnote numeration (1, i, I, a, or A) in tables.

Name

footnote.number.symbols — Special characters to use as footnote markers

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="footnote.number.symbols" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If *footnote.number.symbols* is not the empty string, footnotes will use the characters it contains as footnote symbols. For example, “*†‡◊✠” will identify footnotes with “*”, “†”, “‡”, “◊”, and “✠”. If there are more footnotes than symbols, the stylesheets will fall back to numbered footnotes using *footnote.number.format*.

The use of symbols for footnotes depends on the ability of your processor (or browser) to render the symbols you select. Not all systems are capable of displaying the full range of Unicode characters. If the quoted characters in the preceding paragraph are not displayed properly, that's a good indicator that you may have trouble using those symbols for footnotes.

Name

table.footnote.number.symbols — Special characters to use a footnote markers in tables

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.footnote.number.symbols" select="''"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

If *table.footnote.number.symbols* is not the empty string, table footnotes will use the characters it contains as footnote symbols. For example, “*†‡◊✠” will identify footnotes with “*”, “†”, “‡”, “◊”, and “✠”. If there are more footnotes than symbols, the stylesheets will fall back to numbered footnotes using *table.footnote.number.format*.

The use of symbols for footnotes depends on the ability of your processor (or browser) to render the symbols you select. Not all systems are capable of displaying the full range of Unicode characters. If the quoted characters in the preceding paragraph are not displayed properly, that's a good indicator that you may have trouble using those symbols for footnotes.

Name

highlight.source — Should be content of `programlisting` syntactically highlighted?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="highlight.source" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

When this parameter is non-zero, the stylesheets will try to do syntax highlighting in content of programlisting element.

In order to use this extension, you must add `xslthl.jar` into your Java classpath. You can download this software from http://sourceforge.net/projects/xslthl.

Configuration of syntax highlighting is stored inside `highlighting/xslthl-config.xml` file. Java property `xslthl.config` must be pointing to this file using URL.

This extension is known to work with Saxon 6.5.x. When using syntax highlighting, do not forget to modify your classpath and point to the configuration file using property. Modified Saxon command can look like:

```
java -cp c:\batch\;…;c:\path\to\xslthl.jar \
-Dxslthl.config=file:///c:/docbook-xsl/highlighting/xslthl-config.xml … \
com.icl.saxon.StyleSheet …
```

You can specify language for each programlisting using `language` attribute. Parameter *highlighting.default.language* can be used for specifying language to be used for programlistings without `language` attribute.

Name

highlight.default.language — Default language of programlisting

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="highlight.default.language" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This language is used when there is no language attribute on programlisting.

Name

email.delimiters.enabled — Generate delimiters around email addresses?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="email.delimiters.enabled">1</xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, delimiters[1] are generated around e-mail addresses (the output of the `email` element).

[1]For delimiters, the stylesheets are currently hard-coded to output angle brackets.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Annotations

Name

annotation.support — Enable annotations?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="annotation.support" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, the stylesheets will attempt to support annotation elements in HTML by including some JavaScript (see *`annotation.js`*).

Name

annotation.js — Enable annotations?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="annotation.js" \
select="'http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/script/AnchorPosition.js          \
 http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/script/PopupWindow.js'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If annotation.support is enabled and the document contains `annotation`s, then the URIs listed in this parameter will be included. These JavaScript files are required for popup annotation support.

Name

annotation.css — Enable annotations?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="annotation.css">
/* ====================================================================
   Annotations
*/

div.annotation-list  { visibility: hidden;
                     }

div.annotation-nocss { position: absolute;
                       visibility: hidden;
                     }

div.annotation-popup { position: absolute;
                       z-index: 4;
                       visibility: hidden;
                       padding: 0px;
                       margin: 2px;
                       border-style: solid;
                       border-width: 1px;
                       width: 200px;
         background-color: white;
                     }

div.annotation-title { padding: 1px;
                       font-weight: bold;
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
                        border-bottom-style: solid;
                        border-bottom-width: 1px;
         color: white;
         background-color: black;
                     }

div.annotation-body  { padding: 2px;
                     }

div.annotation-body p { margin-top: 0px;
                        padding-top: 0px;
                      }

div.annotation-close { position: absolute;
                        top: 2px;
                        right: 2px;
                     }
</xsl:param>
```

Description

If annotation.support is enabled and the document contains `annotation`s, then the CSS in this parameter will be included in the document.

Name

annotation.graphic.open — Enable annotations?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="annotation.graphic.open" \
select="'http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/images/annot-open.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This image is used inline to identify the location of annotations.

Name

annotation.graphic.close — Enable annotations?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="annotation.graphic.close" \
select="'http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/images/annot-close.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This image is used on popup annotations as the “x” that the user can click to dismiss the popup.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Graphics

Name

img.src.path — Path to HTML image files

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="img.src.path"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Add a path prefix to each HTML `img` or FO `fo:external-graphics` element's `src` attribute. This path could relative to the directory where the HTML/FO files are created, or it could be an absolute URI. The default value is empty. Be sure to include a trailing slash if needed.

This prefix is not applied to any filerefs that start with "/" or contain "//:".

Name

keep.relative.image.uris — Should image URIs be resolved against xml:base?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="keep.relative.image.uris" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zeor, relative URIs (in, for example fileref attributes) will be used in the generated output. Otherwise, the URIs will be made absolute with respect to the base URI.

Note that the stylesheets calculate (and use) the absolute form for some purposes, this only applies to the resulting output.

Name

graphic.default.extension — Default extension for graphic filenames

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="graphic.default.extension"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If a `graphic` or `mediaobject` includes a reference to a filename that does not include an extension, and the `format` attribute is *unspecified*, the default extension will be used.

Name

default.image.width — The default width of images

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="default.image.width" select="''"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

If specified, this value will be used for the `width` attribute on images that do not specify any viewport dimensions[1].

Name

nominal.image.width — The nominal image width

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="nominal.image.width" select="6 * $pixels.per.inch"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Graphic widths expressed as a percentage are problematic. In the following discussion, we speak of width and contentwidth, but the same issues apply to depth and contentdepth.

A width of 50% means "half of the available space for the image." That's fine. But note that in HTML, this is a dynamic property and the image size will vary if the browser window is resized.

A contentwidth of 50% means "half of the actual image width". But what does that mean if the stylesheets cannot assess the image's actual size? Treating this as a width of 50% is one possibility, but it produces behavior (dynamic scaling) that seems entirely out of character with the meaning.

Instead, the stylesheets define a *`nominal.image.width`* and convert percentages to actual values based on that nominal size.

Name

nominal.image.depth — Nominal image depth

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="nominal.image.depth" select="4 * $pixels.per.inch"></xsl:param>
```

Description

See *`nominal.image.width`*.

Name

use.embed.for.svg — Use HTML `embed` for SVG?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="use.embed.for.svg" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, an `embed` element will be created for SVG figures. An `object` is *always* created, this parameter merely controls whether or not an additional `embed` is generated inside the `object`.

On the plus side, this may be more portable among browsers and plug-ins. On the minus side, it isn't valid HTML.

[1] http://docbook.org/tdg/en/html/imagedata.html#viewport.area

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

make.graphic.viewport — Use tables in HTML to make viewports for graphics

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="make.graphic.viewport" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The HTML `img` element only supports the notion of content-area scaling; it doesn't support the distinction between a content-area and a viewport-area, so we have to make some compromises.

If *`make.graphic.viewport`* is non-zero, a table will be used to frame the image. This creates an effective viewport-area.

Tables and alignment don't work together, so this parameter is ignored if alignment is specified on an image.

Name

preferred.mediaobject.role — Select which mediaobject to use based on this value of an object's `role` attribute.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="preferred.mediaobject.role"></xsl:param>
```

Description

A mediaobject may contain several objects such as imageobjects. If the parameter *`use.role.for.mediaobject`* is non-zero, then the `role` attribute on `imageobject`s and other objects within a `mediaobject` container will be used to select which object will be used. If one of the objects has a role value that matches the preferred.mediaobject.role parameter, then it has first priority for selection. If more than one has such a role value, the first one is used.

See the *`use.role.for.mediaobject`* parameter for the sequence of selection.

Name

use.role.for.mediaobject — Use `role` attribute value for selecting which of several objects within a mediaobject to use.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="use.role.for.mediaobject" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, the `role` attribute on `imageobject`s or other objects within a `mediaobject` container will be used to select which object will be used.

The order of selection when then parameter is non-zero is:

1. If the stylesheet parameter *`preferred.mediaobject.role`* has a value, then the object whose role equals that value is selected.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

2. Else if an object's role attribute has a value of `html` for HTML processing or `fo` for FO output, then the first of such objects is selected.

3. Else the first suitable object is selected.

If the value of *`use.role.for.mediaobject`* is zero, then role attributes are not considered and the first suitable object with or without a role value is used.

Name

ignore.image.scaling — Tell the stylesheets to ignore the author's image scaling attributes

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="ignore.image.scaling" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, the scaling attributes on graphics and media objects are ignored.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Chunking

Name

chunker.output.cdata-section-elements — List of elements to escape with CDATA sections

Synopsis

<xsl:param name="chunker.output.cdata-section-elements" select=""/>

Description

This parameter specifies the list of elements that should be escaped as CDATA sections by the chunking stylesheet. Not all processors support specification of this parameter.

Note

This parameter is documented here, but the declaration is actually in the `chunker.xsl` stylesheet module.

Name

chunker.output.doctype-public — Public identifer to use in the document type of generated pages

Synopsis

<xsl:param name="chunker.output.doctype-public" select=""/>

Description

This parameter specifies the public identifier that should be used by the chunking stylesheet in the document type declaration of chunked pages. Not all processors support specification of this parameter.

Note

This parameter is documented here, but the declaration is actually in the `chunker.xsl` stylesheet module.

Name

chunker.output.doctype-system — System identifier to use for the document type in generated pages

Synopsis

<xsl:param name="chunker.output.doctype-system" select=""/>

Description

This parameter specifies the system identifier that should be used by the chunking stylesheet in the document type declaration of chunked pages. Not all processors support specification of this parameter.

Note

This parameter is documented here, but the declaration is actually in the `chunker.xsl` stylesheet module.

Name

chunker.output.encoding — Encoding used in generated pages

Synopsis

<xsl:param name="chunker.output.encoding" select="'ISO-8859-1'"/>

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

This parameter specifies the encoding to be used in files generated by the chunking stylesheet. Not all processors support specification of this parameter.

This parameter used to be named `default.encoding`.

Note

This parameter is documented here, but the declaration is actually in the `chunker.xsl` stylesheet module.

Name

chunker.output.indent — Specification of indentation on generated pages

Synopsis

<xsl:param name="chunker.output.indent" select="'no'"/>

Description

This parameter specifies the value of the indent specification for generated pages. Not all processors support specification of this parameter.

Note

This parameter is documented here, but the declaration is actually in the `chunker.xsl` stylesheet module.

Name

chunker.output.media-type — Media type to use in generated pages

Synopsis

<xsl:param name="chunker.output.media-type" select=""/>

Description

This parameter specifies the media type that should be used by the chunking stylesheet. Not all processors support specification of this parameter.

Note

This parameter is documented here, but the declaration is actually in the `chunker.xsl` stylesheet module.

Name

chunker.output.method — Method used in generated pages

Synopsis

<xsl:param name="chunker.output.method" select="'html'"/>

Description

This parameter specifies the output method to be used in files generated by the chunking stylesheet.

This parameter used to be named `output.method`.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Note

This parameter is documented here, but the declaration is actually in the `chunker.xsl` stylesheet module.

Name

chunker.output.omit-xml-declaration — Omit-xml-declaration for generated pages

Synopsis

<xsl:param name="chunker.output.omit-xml-declaration" select="'no'"/>

Description

This parameter specifies the value of the omit-xml-declaration specification for generated pages. Not all processors support specification of this parameter.

Note

This parameter is documented here, but the declaration is actually in the `chunker.xsl` stylesheet module.

Name

chunker.output.standalone — Standalone declaration for generated pages

Synopsis

<xsl:param name="chunker.output.standalone" select="'no'"/>

Description

This parameter specifies the value of the standalone specification for generated pages. Not all processors support specification of this parameter.

Note

This parameter is documented here, but the declaration is actually in the `chunker.xsl` stylesheet module.

Name

saxon.character.representation — Saxon character representation used in generated HTML pages

Synopsis

<xsl:param name="saxon.character.representation" select="'entity;decimal'"/>

Description

This character representation is used in files generated by chunking stylesheet. If you want to suppress entity references for characters with direct representation in default.encoding, set this parameter to value `native`.

Note

This parameter is documented here, but the declaration is actually in the `chunker.xsl` stylesheet module.

Name

html.ext — Identifies the extension of generated HTML files

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="html.ext" select="'.html'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The extension identified by *html.ext* will be used as the filename extension for chunks created by this stylesheet.

Name

use.id.as.filename — Use ID value of chunk elements as the filename?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="use.id.as.filename" select="'0'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If *use.id.as.filename* is non-zero, the filename of chunk elements that have IDs will be derived from the ID value.

Name

html.extra.head.links — Toggle extra HTML head link information

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="html.extra.head.links" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, extra `link` elements will be generated in the `head` of chunked HTML files. These extra links point to chapters, appendixes, sections, etc. as supported by the “Site Navigation Bar” in Mozilla 1.0 (as of CR1, at least).

Name

root.filename — Identifies the name of the root HTML file when chunking

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="root.filename" select="'index'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The *root.filename* is the base filename for the chunk created for the root of each document processed.

Name

base.dir — The base directory of chunks

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="base.dir" select="''"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

If specified, the `base.dir` identifies the output directory for chunks. (If not specified, the output directory is system dependent.)

Name

generate.manifest — Generate a manifest file?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="generate.manifest" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, a list of HTML files generated by the stylesheet transformation is written to the file named by the *`manifest`* parameter.

Name

manifest — Name of manifest file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="manifest" select="'HTML.manifest'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The name of the file to which a manifest is written (if the value of the *`generate.manifest`* parameter is non-zero).

Name

manifest.in.base.dir — Should be manifest file written in $base.dir?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="manifest.in.base.dir" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero manifest file and project files for HTML Help and Eclipse Help are written into *`base.dir`* instead of current directory.

Name

chunk.toc — An explicit TOC to be used for chunking

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="chunk.toc" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The *`chunk.toc`* identifies an explicit TOC that will be used for chunking. This parameter is only used by the `chunktoc.xsl` stylesheet (and customization layers built from it).

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

chunk.tocs.and.lots — Should ToC and LoTs be in separate chunks?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="chunk.tocs.and.lots" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, ToC and LoT (List of Examples, List of Figures, etc.) will be put in a separate chunk. At the moment, this chunk is not in the normal forward/backward navigation list. Instead, a new link is added to the navigation footer.

This feature is still somewhat experimental. Feedback welcome.

Name

chunk.separate.lots — Should each LoT be in its own separate chunk?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="chunk.separate.lots" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, each of the ToC and LoTs (List of Examples, List of Figures, etc.) will be put in its own separate chunk. The title page includes generated links to each of the separate files.

This feature depends on the `chunk.tocs.and.lots` parameter also being non-zero.

Name

chunk.tocs.and.lots.has.title — Should ToC and LoTs in a separate chunks have title?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="chunk.tocs.and.lots.has.title" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero title of document is shown before ToC/LoT in separate chunk.

Name

chunk.section.depth — Depth to which sections should be chunked

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="chunk.section.depth" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter sets the depth of section chunking.

Name

chunk.first.sections — Chunk the first top-level section?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="chunk.first.sections" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, a chunk will be created for the first top-level `sect1` or `section` elements in each component. Otherwise, that section will be part of the chunk for its parent.

Name

chunk.quietly — Omit the chunked filename messages.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="chunk.quietly" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If zero (the default), the XSL processor emits a message naming each separate chunk filename as it is being output. If nonzero, then the messages are suppressed.

Name

chunk.append — Specifies content to append to chunked HTML output

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="chunk.append"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies content to append to the end of HTML files output by the `html/chunk.xsl` stylesheet, after the closing `<html>` tag. You probably don't want to set any value for this parameter; but if you do, the only value it should ever be set to is a newline character: `
` or `
`

Name

navig.graphics — Use graphics in navigational headers and footers?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="navig.graphics" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), the navigational headers and footers in chunked HTML are presented in an alternate style that uses graphical icons for Next, Previous, Up, and Home. Default graphics are provided in the distribution.

Name

navig.graphics.extension — Extension for navigational graphics

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="navig.graphics.extension" select="'.gif'"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

Sets the filename extension to use on navigational graphics used in the headers and footers of chunked HTML.

Name

navig.graphics.path — Path to navigational graphics

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="navig.graphics.path">images/</xsl:param>
```

Description

Sets the path, probably relative to the directory where the HTML files are created, to the navigational graphics used in the headers and footers of chunked HTML.

Name

navig.showtitles — Display titles in HTML headers and footers?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="navig.showtitles">1</xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), the headers and footers of chunked HTML display the titles of the next and previous chunks, along with the words 'Next' and 'Previous' (or the equivalent graphical icons if navig.graphics is true). If false (zero), then only the words 'Next' and 'Previous' (or the icons) are displayed.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Profiling

Following parameters can be used for attribute value based profiling of your document. For more info about profiling look at http://docbook.sourceforge.net/projects/xsl/doc/tools/profiling.html.

Name

profile.arch — Target profile for `arch` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.arch" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, ...) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, ...).

Name

profile.condition — Target profile for `condition` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.condition" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, ...) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, ...).

Name

profile.conformance — Target profile for `conformance` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.conformance" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, ...) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, ...).

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

profile.lang — Target profile for `lang` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.lang" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.os — Target profile for `os` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.os" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.revision — Target profile for `revision` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.revision" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.revisionflag — Target profile for `revisionflag` attribute

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.revisionflag" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.role — Target profile for `role` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.role" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Warning

Note that `role` is often used for other purposes than profiling. For example it is commonly used to get emphasize in bold font:

```
<emphasis role="bold">very important</emphasis>
```

If you are using `role` for these purposes do not forget to add values like `bold` to value of this parameter. If you forgot you will get document with small pieces missing which are very hard to track.

For this reason it is not recommended to use `role` attribute for profiling. You should rather use profiling specific attributes like `userlevel`, `os`, `arch`, `condition`, etc.

Name

profile.security — Target profile for `security` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.security" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.status — Target profile for `status` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.status" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.userlevel — Target profile for `userlevel` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.userlevel" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.vendor — Target profile for `vendor` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.vendor" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.attribute — Name of user-specified profiling attribute

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.attribute" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter is used in conjuction with *profile.value*.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (profile-docbook.xsl, profile-chunk.xsl, ...) instead of normal ones (docbook.xsl, chunk.xsl, ...).

Name

profile.value — Target profile for user-specified attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.value" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

When you are using this parameter you must also specify name of profiling attribute with parameter *profile.attribute*.

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *profile.separator* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (profile-docbook.xsl, profile-chunk.xsl, ...) instead of normal ones (docbook.xsl, chunk.xsl, ...).

Name

profile.separator — Separator character for compound profile values

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.separator" select="';'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Separator character for compound profile values.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

HTML Help

Name

htmlhelp.encoding — Character encoding to use in files for HTML Help compiler.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.encoding" select="'iso-8859-1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

HTML Help Compiler is not UTF-8 aware, so you should always use apropriate single-byte encoding here.

Name

htmlhelp.autolabel — Should tree-like ToC use autonumbering feature?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.autolabel" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want to include chapter and section numbers into ToC in the left panel, set this parameter to 1.

Name

htmlhelp.chm — Filename of output HTML Help file.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.chm" select="'htmlhelp.chm'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Change this parameter if you want different name of result CHM file than htmlhelp.chm.

Name

htmlhelp.default.topic — Name of file with default topic

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.default.topic" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Normally first chunk of document is displayed when you open HTML Help file. If you want to display another topic, simply set its filename by this parameter.

This is useful especially if you don't generate ToC in front of your document and you also hide root element in ToC. E.g.:

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
<xsl:param name="generate.book.toc" select="0"/>
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.hhc.show.root" select="0"/>
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.default.topic" select="'pr01.html'"/>
```

Name

htmlhelp.display.progress — Display compile progress?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.display.progress" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

You can swith off display of compile progress by setting this parameter to 0.

Name

htmlhelp.hhp — Filename of project file.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.hhp" select="'htmlhelp.hhp'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Change this parameter if you want different name of project file than htmlhelp.hhp.

Name

htmlhelp.hhc — Filename of TOC file.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.hhc" select="'toc.hhc'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Change this parameter if you want different name of TOC file than toc.hhc.

Name

htmlhelp.hhk — Filename of index file.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.hhk" select="'index.hhk'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Change this parameter if you want different name of index file than index.hhk.

Name

htmlhelp.hhp.tail — Additional content for project file.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.hhp.tail"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want to include some additional parameters into project file, store appropriate part of project file into this parameter.

Name

htmlhelp.hhp.window — Name of default window.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.hhp.window" select="'Main'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Name of default window. If empty no [WINDOWS] section will be added to project file.

Name

htmlhelp.hhp.windows — Definition of additional windows

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.hhp.windows"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Content of this parameter is placed at the end of [WINDOWS] section of project file. You can use it for defining your own addtional windows.

Name

htmlhelp.enhanced.decompilation — Allow enhanced decompilation of CHM?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.enhanced.decompilation" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

When set to 1 this parameter enables enhanced decompilation of CHM.

Name

htmlhelp.enumerate.images — Should be paths to all used images added to project file?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.enumerate.images" select="0"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

You should turn on this flag, if you insert images into your documents as external binary entities or if you are using absolute path in image names.

Name

htmlhelp.force.map.and.alias — Should be [MAP] and [ALIAS] section added to project file unconditionaly?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.force.map.and.alias" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

You should turn on this flag, if you have your own `alias.h` and `contex.h` files and you want include reference to them in project file.

Name

htmlhelp.map.file — Filename of map file.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.map.file" select="'context.h'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Change this parameter if you want different name of map file than `context.h`.

Name

htmlhelp.alias.file — Filename of map file.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.alias.file" select="'alias.h'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Change this parameter if you want different name of map file than `alias.h`.

Name

htmlhelp.hhc.section.depth — Depth of TOC for sections in a left pane.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.hhc.section.depth" select="5"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Change this parameter if you want shallower ToC in a left pane of HTML Help viewer.

Name

htmlhelp.hhc.show.root — Should be entry for root element shown in ToC?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.hhc.show.root" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If set to 0, there will be no entry for root element in ToC. This is useful when you want provide user with expanded ToC as a default.

Name

htmlhelp.hhc.folders.instead.books — Use folder icons in ToC (instead of book icons)?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.hhc.folders.instead.books" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter controls whether there should be folder-like icons (1) or book-like icons (0) in ToC. If you want to use folder-like icons you must swith off binary ToC using *`htmlhelp.hhc.binary`*.

Name

htmlhelp.hhc.binary — Generate binary ToC?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.hhc.binary" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parametr controls whether binary TOC will be generated. You must create binary TOC if you want to add Prev/Next buttons to toolbar (which is default behaviour). Files with binary TOC can't be merged.

Name

htmlhelp.hhc.width — Width of navigation (ToC) pane

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.hhc.width"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter specifies width of ToC pane in pixels.

Name

htmlhelp.title — Title of HTML Help

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.title" select="''"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

Content of this parameter will be used as a title for generated HTML Help. If empty, title will be automatically taken from document.

Name

htmlhelp.show.menu — Should be menu shown?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.show.menu" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want application menu in your HTML Help file, turn this parameter to 1.

Name

htmlhelp.show.toolbar.text — Show text under toolbar buttons?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.show.toolbar.text" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

You can switch off display of texts under toolbar buttons by setting this parameter to 0.

Name

htmlhelp.show.advanced.search — Should be advanced search available?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.show.advanced.search" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want advanced search features in your help, turn this parameter to 1.

Name

htmlhelp.show.favorities — Should be favorities tab shown?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.show.favorities" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want favorities tab shown in your help, turn this parameter to 1.

Name

htmlhelp.button.hideshow — Should be Hide/Show button shown?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.hideshow" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want Hide/Show button shown on toolbar, turn this parameter to 1.

Name

htmlhelp.button.back — Should be Back button shown?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.back" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want Back button shown on toolbar, turn this parameter to 1.

Name

htmlhelp.button.forward — Should be Forward button shown?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.forward" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want Forward button shown on toolbar, turn this parameter to 1.

Name

htmlhelp.button.stop — Should be Stop button shown?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.stop" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want Stop button shown on toolbar, turn this parameter to 1.

Name

htmlhelp.button.refresh — Should be Refresh button shown?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.refresh" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want Refresh button shown on toolbar, turn this parameter to 1.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

htmlhelp.button.home — Should be Home button shown?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.home" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want Home button shown on toolbar, turn this parameter to 1.

Name

htmlhelp.button.home.url — URL address of page accessible by Home button

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.home.url"></xsl:param>
```

Description

URL address of page accessible by Home button.

Name

htmlhelp.button.options — Should be Options button shown?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.options" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want Options button shown on toolbar, turn this parameter to 1.

Name

htmlhelp.button.print — Should be Print button shown?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.print" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want Print button shown on toolbar, turn this parameter to 1.

Name

htmlhelp.button.locate — Should be Locate button shown?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.locate" select="0"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

If you want Locate button shown on toolbar, turn this parameter to 1.

Name

htmlhelp.button.jump1 — Should be Jump1 button shown?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.jump1" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want Jump1 button shown on toolbar, turn this parameter to 1.

Name

htmlhelp.button.jump1.url — URL address of page accessible by Jump1 button

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.jump1.url"></xsl:param>
```

Description

URL address of page accessible by Jump1 button.

Name

htmlhelp.button.jump1.title — Title of Jump1 button

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.jump1.title" select="'User1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Title of Jump1 button.

Name

htmlhelp.button.jump2 — Should be Jump2 button shown?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.jump2" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want Jump2 button shown on toolbar, turn this parameter to 1.

Name

htmlhelp.button.jump2.url — URL address of page accessible by Jump2 button

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.jump2.url"></xsl:param>
```

Description

URL address of page accessible by Jump2 button.

Name

htmlhelp.button.jump2.title — Title of Jump2 button

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.jump2.title" select="'User2'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Title of Jump2 button.

Name

htmlhelp.button.next — Should be Next button shown?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.next" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want Next button shown on toolbar, turn this parameter to 1.

Name

htmlhelp.button.prev — Should be Prev button shown?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.prev" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want Prev button shown on toolbar, turn this parameter to 1.

Name

htmlhelp.button.zoom — Should be Zoom button shown?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.button.zoom" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want Zoom button shown on toolbar, turn this parameter to 1.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

htmlhelp.remember.window.position — Remember help window position?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.remember.window.position" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

To remember help window position between starts set this parameter to 1.

Name

htmlhelp.window.geometry — Set initial geometry of help window

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.window.geometry"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter specifies initial position of help window. E.g.

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.window.geometry">[160,64,992,704]</xsl:param>
```

Name

htmlhelp.use.hhk — Should be index built using HHK file?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.use.hhk" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, index is created using HHK file. This provides some new features.

Name

htmlhelp.only — Should be only project files generated?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="htmlhelp.only" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want to play with various HTML Help parameters and you don't need to regenerate all HTML files, you can set this parameter to 1. This setting will not process whole document, only project files (hhp, hhc, hhk,...) will be generated.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Eclipse Help Platform

Name

eclipse.autolabel — Should tree-like ToC use autonumbering feature?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="eclipse.autolabel" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want to include chapter and section numbers into ToC in the left panel, set this parameter to 1.

Name

eclipse.plugin.name — Eclipse Help plugin name

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="eclipse.plugin.name">DocBook Online Help Sample</xsl:param>
```

Description

Eclipse Help plugin name.

Name

eclipse.plugin.id — Eclipse Help plugin id

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="eclipse.plugin.id">com.example.help</xsl:param>
```

Description

Eclipse Help plugin id. You should change this id to something unique for each help.

Name

eclipse.plugin.provider — Eclipse Help plugin provider name

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="eclipse.plugin.provider">Example provider</xsl:param>
```

Description

Eclipse Help plugin provider name.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Localization

Name

l10n.gentext.language — Sets the gentext language

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="l10n.gentext.language" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If this parameter is set to any value other than the empty string, its value will be used as the value for the language when generating text. Setting `l10n.gentext.language` overrides any settings within the document being formatted.

It's much more likely that you might want to set the `l10n.gentext.default.language` parameter.

Name

l10n.gentext.default.language — Sets the default language for generated text

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="l10n.gentext.default.language" select="'en'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The value of the `l10n.gentext.default.language` parameter is used as the language for generated text if no setting is provided in the source document.

Name

l10n.gentext.use.xref.language — Use the language of target when generating cross-reference text?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="l10n.gentext.use.xref.language" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, the language of the target will be used when generating cross reference text. Usually, the “current” language is used when generating text (that is, the language of the element that contains the cross-reference element). But setting this parameter allows the language of the element *pointed to* to control the generated text.

Consider the following example:

```
<para lang="en">See also <xref linkend="chap3"/>.</para>
```

Suppose that Chapter 3 happens to be written in German. If `l10n.gentext.use.xref.language` is non-zero, the resulting text will be something like this:

> See also Kapital 3.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Where the more traditional rendering would be:

See also Chapter 3.

Name

l10n.lang.value.rfc.compliant — Make value of lang attribute RFC compliant?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="l10n.lang.value.rfc.compliant" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, ensure that the values for all `lang` attributes in HTML output are RFC compliant[1]. by taking any underscore characters in any `lang` values found in source documents, and replacing them with hyphen characters in output HTML files. For example, `zh_CN` in a source document becomes `zh-CN` in the HTML output form that source.

Note

This parameter does not cause any case change in `lang` values, because RFC 1766 explicitly states that all "language tags" (as it calls them) "are to be treated as case insensitive".

[1]Section 8.1.1, Language Codes [http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html40/struct/dirlang.html#h-8.1.1], in the HTML 4.0 Recommendation states that:

> [RFC1766] defines and explains the language codes that must be used in HTML documents.
>
> Briefly, language codes consist of a primary code and a possibly empty series of subcodes:
>
> ```
> language-code = primary-code ( "-" subcode )*
> ```
>
> And in RFC 1766, Tags for the Identification of Languages [http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc1766.txt], the EBNF for "language tag" is given as:
>
> ```
> Language-Tag = Primary-tag *( "-" Subtag )
> Primary-tag = 1*8ALPHA
> Subtag = 1*8ALPHA
> ```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Part II. FO Parameter Reference

This is reference documentation for all user-configurable parameters in the DocBook XSL FO stylesheets (for generating XSL-FO output destined for final print/PDF output).

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Admonitions

Name

admon.graphics — Use graphics in admonitions?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="admon.graphics" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), admonitions are presented in an alternate style that uses a graphic. Default graphics are provided in the distribution.

Name

admon.graphics.extension — Extension for admonition graphics

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="admon.graphics.extension" select="'.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Sets the extension to use on admonition graphics.

Name

admon.graphics.path — Path to admonition graphics

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="admon.graphics.path">images/</xsl:param>
```

Description

Sets the path, probably relative to the directory where the HTML files are created, to the admonition graphics.

Name

admon.textlabel — Use text label in admonitions?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="admon.textlabel" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), admonitions are presented with a generated text label such as Note or Warning in the appropriate language. If zero, such labels are turned off, but any title child of the admonition element are still output. The default value is 1.

Name

admonition.title.properties — To set the style for admonitions titles.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="admonition.title.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">14pt</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-weight">bold</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="hyphenate">false</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="keep-with-next.within-column">always</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

How do you want admonitions titles styled?

Set the font-size, weight etc to the style required.

Name

admonition.properties — To set the style for admonitions.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="admonition.properties"></xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

How do you want admonitions styled?

Set the font-size, weight, etc. to the style required

Name

graphical.admonition.properties — To add properties to the outer block of a graphical admonition.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="graphical.admonition.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.optimum">1em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.minimum">0.8em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.maximum">1.2em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.optimum">1em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.minimum">0.8em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.maximum">1.2em</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

These properties are added to the outer block containing the entire graphical admonition, including its title. It is used when the parameter *`admon.graphics`* is set to nonzero. Use this attribute-set to set the space above and below, and any indent for the whole admonition.

In addition to these properties, a graphical admonition also applies the *`admonition.title.properties`* attribute-set to the title, and applies the *`admonition.properties`* attribute-set to the rest of the content.

Name

nongraphical.admonition.properties — To add properties to the outer block of a nongraphical admonition.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="nongraphical.admonition.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.minimum">0.8em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.optimum">1em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.maximum">1.2em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="margin-left">0.25in</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="margin-right">0.25in</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

These properties are added to the outer block containing the entire nongraphical admonition, including its title. It is used when the parameter *admon.graphics* is set to zero. Use this attribute-set to set the space above and below, and any indent for the whole admonition.

In addition to these properties, a nongraphical admonition also applies the *admonition.title.properties* attribute-set to the title, and the *admonition.properties* attribute-set to the rest of the content.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Callouts

Name

callout.defaultcolumn — Indicates what column callouts appear in by default

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.defaultcolumn" select="'60'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If a callout does not identify a column (for example, if it uses the `linerange unit`), it will appear in the default column.

Name

callout.graphics — Use graphics for callouts?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.graphics" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, callouts are presented with graphics (e.g., reverse-video circled numbers instead of "(1)", "(2)", etc.). Default graphics are provided in the distribution.

Name

callout.graphics.extension — Extension for callout graphics

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.graphics.extension" select="'.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Sets the extension to use on callout graphics.

Name

callout.graphics.number.limit — Number of the largest callout graphic

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.graphics.number.limit" select="'15'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If *`callout.graphics`* is non-zero, graphics are used to represent callout numbers. The value of *`callout.graphics.number.limit`* is the largest number for which a graphic exists. If the callout number exceeds this limit, the default presentation "(nnn)" will always be used.

Name

callout.graphics.path — Path to callout graphics

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.graphics.path" select="'images/callouts/'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Sets the path, probably relative to the directory where the HTML files are created, to the callout graphics.

Name

callout.unicode — Use Unicode characters rather than images for callouts.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.unicode" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The stylesheets can use either an image of the numbers one to ten, or the single Unicode character which represents the numeral, in white on a black background. Use this to select the Unicode character option.

Name

callout.unicode.font — Specify a font for Unicode glyphs

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.unicode.font" select="'ZapfDingbats'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The name of the font to specify around Unicode callout glyphs. If set to the empty string, no font change will occur.

Name

callout.unicode.number.limit — Number of the largest callout graphic

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.unicode.number.limit" select="'10'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If `callout.unicode` is non-zero, unicode characters are used to represent callout numbers. The value of `callout.unicode.number.limit` is the largest number for which a unicode character exists. If the callout number exceeds this limit, the default presentation "(nnn)" will always be used.

Name

callout.unicode.start.character — First Unicode character to use, decimal value.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callout.unicode.start.character" select="10102"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

If *`callout.graphics`* is zero and *`callout.unicode`* is non-zero, unicode characters are used to represent callout numbers. The value of *`callout.unicode.start.character`* is the decimal unicode value used for callout number one. Currently, only 10102 is supported in the stylesheets for this parameter.

Name

callouts.extension — Enable the callout extension

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="callouts.extension" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The callouts extension processes `areaset` elements in `ProgramListingCO` and other text-based callout elements.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

ToC/LoT/Index Generation

Name

autotoc.label.separator — Separator between labels and titles in the ToC

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="autotoc.label.separator" select="'. '"></xsl:param>
```

Description

String to use to seperate labels and title in a table of contents.

Name

process.empty.source.toc — Generate automated TOC if `toc` element occurs in a source document?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="process.empty.source.toc" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies that if an empty `toc` element is found in a source document, an automated TOC is generated.

Note

Depending on what the value of the *`generate.toc`* parameter is, setting this parameter to `1` could result in generation of duplicate automated TOCs. So the *`process.empty.source.toc`* is primarily useful as an "override": by placing an empty `toc` in your document and setting this parameter to `1`, you can force a TOC to be generated even if `generate.toc` says not to.

Name

process.source.toc — Process a non-empty `toc` element if it occurs in a source document?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="process.source.toc" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies that the contents of a non-empty "hard-coded" `toc` element in a source document are processed to generate a TOC in output.

Note

This parameter has no effect on automated generation of TOCs. An automated TOC may still be generated along with the "hard-coded" TOC. To suppress automated TOC generation, adjust the value of the *`generate.toc`* paramameter.

The `process.source.toc` parameter also has no effect if the `toc` element is empty; handling for empty `toc` is controlled by the *`process.empty.source.toc`* parameter.

Name

generate.toc — Control generation of ToCs and LoTs

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="generate.toc">
appendix  toc,title
article/appendix  nop
article   toc,title
book      toc,title,figure,table,example,equation
chapter   toc,title
part      toc,title
preface   toc,title
qandadiv  toc
qandaset  toc
reference toc,title
sect1     toc
sect2     toc
sect3     toc
sect4     toc
sect5     toc
section   toc
set       toc,title
</xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter has a structured value. It is a table of space-delimited path/value pairs. Each path identifies some element in the source document using a restricted subset of XPath (only the implicit child axis, no wildcards, no predicates). Paths can be either relative or absolute.

When processing a particular element, the stylesheets consult this table to determine if a ToC (or LoT(s)) should be generated.

For example, consider the entry:

```
book toc,figure
```

This indicates that whenever a `book` is formatted, a Table Of Contents and a List of Figures should be generated. Similarly,

```
/chapter toc
```

indicates that whenever a document *that has a root of* `chapter` is formatted, a Table of Contents should be generated. The entry `chapter` would match all chapters, but `/chapter` matches only `chapter` document elements.

Generally, the longest match wins. So, for example, if you want to distinguish articles in books from articles in parts, you could use these two entries:

```
book/article toc,figure
part/article toc
```

Note that an article in a part can never match a `book/article`, so if you want nothing to be generated for articles in parts, you can simply leave that rule out.

If you want to leave the rule in, to make it explicit that you're turning something off, use the value “nop”. For example, the following entry disables ToCs and LoTs for articles:

```
article nop
```

Do not simply leave the word “article” in the file without a matching value. That'd be just begging the silly little path/value parser to get confused.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Section ToCs are further controlled by the *generate.section.toc.level* parameter. For a given section level to have a ToC, it must have both an entry in *generate.toc* and be within the range enabled by *generate.section.toc.level*.

Name

generate.index — Do you want an index?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="generate.index" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specify if an index should be generated.

Name

make.index.markup — Generate XML index markup in the index?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="make.index.markup" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter enables a very neat trick for getting properly merged, collated back-of-the-book indexes. G. Ken Holman suggested this trick at Extreme Markup Languages 2002 and I'm indebted to him for it.

Jeni Tennison's excellent code in `autoidx.xsl` does a great job of merging and sorting `indexterm`s in the document and building a back-of-the-book index. However, there's one thing that it cannot reasonably be expected to do: merge page numbers into ranges. (I would not have thought that it could collate and suppress duplicate page numbers, but in fact it appears to manage that task somehow.)

Ken's trick is to produce a document in which the index at the back of the book is “displayed” in XML. Because the index is generated by the FO processor, all of the page numbers have been resolved. It's a bit hard to explain, but what it boils down to is that instead of having an index at the back of the book that looks like this:

A. ap1, 1, 2, 3

you get one that looks like this:

```
<indexdiv>A</indexdiv>
<indexentry>
<primaryie>ap1</primaryie>,
<phrase role="pageno">1</phrase>,
<phrase role="pageno">2</phrase>,
<phrase role="pageno">3</phrase>
</indexentry>
```

After building a PDF file with this sort of odd-looking index, you can extract the text from the PDF file and the result is a proper index expressed in XML.

Now you have data that's amenable to processing and a simple Perl script (such as `fo/pdf2index`) can merge page ranges and generate a proper index.

Finally, reformat your original document using this literal index instead of an automatically generated one and “bingo”!

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

index.method — Select method used to group index entries in an index

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="index.method" select="'basic'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter lets you select which method should be used to sort and group index entries in an index. Indexes in latin-based languages that have accented characters typically sort together accented words and unaccented words. Thus “Á” (A acute) would sort together with “A”, so both would appear in the “A” section of the index. Languages using other alphabets (such as Russian cyrillic) and languages using ideographic chararacters (such as Japanese) require grouping specific to the languages and alphabets.

The default indexing method is limited. It can group accented characters in latin-based languages only. It cannot handle non-latin alphabets or ideographic languages. The other indexing methods require extensions of one type or another, and do not work with all XSLT processors, which is why there are not used by default.

The three choices for indexing method are:

`basic`
: (default) Sort and groups words based only on the Latin alphabet. Words with accented latin letters will group and sort with their respective primary letter, but words in non-Latin alphabets will be put in the “Symbols” section of the index.

`kosek`
: Sort and groups words based on letter groups configured in the DocBook locale file for the given language. See, for example, the French locale file `common/fr.xml`. This method requires that the XSLT processor support the EXSLT extensions (most do). It also requires support for using user-defined functions in xsl:key (xsltproc does not).

  This method is suitable for any language for which you can list all the individual characters that should appear in each letter group in an index. It is probably not practical to use it for ideographic languages such as Chinese that have hundreds or thousands of characters.

  To use the kosek method, you must:

  1. Use a processor that supports its extensions, such as Saxon 6 or Xalan (xsltproc and Saxon 8 do not).
  2. Set the index.method parameter's value to “kosek”.
  3. Import the appropriate index extensions stylesheet module `fo/autoidx-kosek.xsl` or `html/autoidx-kosek.xsl` into your customization.

`kimber`
: This method uses extensions to the Saxon processor to implement sophisticated indexing processes. It uses its own configuration file, which can include information for any number of languages. Each language's configuration can group words using one of two processes. In the enumerated process similar to that used in the kosek method, you indicate the groupings character-by-character. In the between-key process, you specify the break-points in the sort order that should start a new group. The latter configuration is useful for ideographic languages such as Chinese, Japanese, and Korean. You can also define your own collation algorithms and how you want mixed Latin-alphabet words sorted.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

- For a whitepaper describing the extensions, see: http://www.innodata-isogen.com/knowledge_center/white_papers/back_of_book_for_xsl_fo.pdf.
- To download the extension library, see http://www.innodata-isogen.com/knowledge_center/tools_downloads/i18nsupport.

To use the kimber method, you must:

1. Use Saxon (version 6 or 8) as your XSLT processor.
2. Install and configure the Innodata Isogen library, using the documentation that comes with it.
3. Set the index.method parameter's value to “kimber”.
4. Import the appropriate index extensions stylesheet module `fo/autoidx-kimber.xsl` or `html/autoidx-kimber.xsl` into your customization.

Name

index.on.type — Select indexterms based on `type` attribute value

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="index.on.type" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, then an `index` element that has a `type` attribute value will contain only those `indexterm` elements with a matching `type` attribute value. If an `index` has no `type` attribute or it is blank, then the index will contain all `indexterm`s in the current scope.

If `index.on.type` is zero, then the `type` attribute has no effect on selecting indexterms for an index.

For those using DocBook version 4.2 or earlier, the `type` attribute is not available for index terms. However, you can achieve the same effect by using the `role` attribute in the same manner on `indexterm` and `index`, and setting the stylesheet parameter *`index.on.role`* to a nonzero value.

Name

index.on.role — Select indexterms based on role value

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="index.on.role" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, then an `index` element that has a `role` attribute value will contain only those `indexterm` elements with a matching role value. If an `index` has no `role` attribute or it is blank, then the index will contain all `indexterm`s in the current scope.

If `index.on.role` is zero, then the `role` attribute has no effect on selecting indexterms for an index.

If you are using DocBook version 4.3 or later, you should use the `type` attribute instead of `role` on `indexterm` and `index`, and set the *`index.on.type`* to a nonzero value.

Name

index.preferred.page.properties — Properties used to emphasize page number references for significant index terms

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="index.preferred.page.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-weight">bold</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Properties used to emphasize page number references for significant index terms (`significance=preffered`). Currently works only with XEP.

Name

index.entry.properties — Properties applied to the formatted entries in an index

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="index.entry.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="start-indent">0pt</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

This attribute set is applied to the block containing the entries in a letter division in an index. It can be used to set the font-size, font-family, and other inheritable properties that will be applied to all index entries.

Name

index.div.title.properties — Properties associated with the letter headings in an index

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="index.div.title.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="margin-left">0pt</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">14.4pt</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-family"><xsl:value-of \
select="$title.fontset"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-weight">bold</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="keep-with-next.within-column">always</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.optimum"><xsl:value-of \
select="concat($body.font.master,'pt')"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.minimum"><xsl:value-of \
select="concat($body.font.master,'pt * 0.8')"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.optimum"><xsl:value-of \
select="concat($body.font.master,'pt * 1.2')"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="start-indent">0pt</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

This attribute set is used on the letter headings that separate the divisions in an index.

Name

index.number.separator — Override for punctuation separating page numbers in index

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="index.number.separator" select="''"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

This parameter permits you to override the text to insert between page references in a formatted index entry. Typically that would be a comma and a space.

Because this text may be locale dependent, this parameter's value is normally taken from a gentext template named 'number-separator' in the context 'index' in the stylesheet locale file for the language of the current document. This parameter can be used to override the gentext string, and would typically be used on the command line. This parameter would apply to all languages.

So this text string can be customized in two ways. You can reset the default gentext string using the `local.l10n.xml` parameter, or you can override the gentext with the content of this parameter. The content can be a simple string, or it can be something more complex such as a call-template.

In HTML index output, section title references are used instead of page number references. This punctuation appears between such section titles in an HTML index.

Name

index.range.separator — Override for punctuation separating the two numbers in a page range in index

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="index.range.separator" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter permits you to override the text to insert between the two numbers of a page range in an index. This parameter is only used by those XSL-FO processors that support an extension for generating such page ranges (such as XEP).

Because this text may be locale dependent, this parameter's value is normally taken from a gentext template named 'range-separator' in the context 'index' in the stylesheet locale file for the language of the current document. This parameter can be used to override the gentext string, and would typically be used on the command line. This parameter would apply to all languages.

So this text string can be customized in two ways. You can reset the default gentext string using the `local.l10n.xml` parameter, or you can override the gentext with the content of this parameter. The content can be a simple string, or it can be something more complex such as a call-template.

In HTML index output, section title references are used instead of page number references. So there are no page ranges and this parameter has no effect.

Name

index.term.separator — Override for punctuation separating an index term from its list of page references in an index

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="index.term.separator" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter permits you to override the text to insert between the end of an index term and its list of page references. Typically that might be a comma and a space.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Because this text may be locale dependent, this parameter's value is normally taken from a gentext template named 'term-separator' in the context 'index' in the stylesheet locale file for the language of the current document. This parameter can be used to override the gentext string, and would typically be used on the command line. This parameter would apply to all languages.

So this text string can be customized in two ways. You can reset the default gentext string using the `local.l10n.xml` parameter, or you can fill in the content for this normally empty override parameter. The content can be a simple string, or it can be something more complex such as a call-template. For fo output, it could be an `fo:leader` element to provide space of a specific length, or a dot leader.

Name

xep.index.item.properties — Properties associated with XEP index-items

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="xep.index.item.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="index.page.number.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="merge-subsequent-page-numbers">true</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="link-back">true</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Properties associated with XEP index-items, which generate page numbers in an index processed by XEP. For more info see the XEP documentation section "Indexes" in http://www.renderx.com/reference.html#Indexes.

This attribute-set also adds by default any properties from the `index.page.number.properties` attribute-set.

Name

toc.section.depth — How deep should recursive `section`s appear in the TOC?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.section.depth">2</xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the depth to which recursive sections should appear in the TOC.

Name

toc.max.depth — How maximaly deep should be each TOC?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.max.depth">8</xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the maximal depth of TOC on all levels.

Name

toc.indent.width — Amount of indentation for TOC entries

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.indent.width" select="24"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies, in points, the distance by which each level of the TOC is indented from its parent.

This value is expressed in points, without a unit (in other words, it is a bare number). Using a bare number allows the stylesheet to perform calculations that would otherwise have to be performed by the FO processor because not all processors support expressions.

Name

toc.line.properties — Properties for lines in ToC and LoTs

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="toc.line.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="text-align-last">justify</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="text-align">start</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Properties which are applied to every line in ToC (or LoT). You can modify them in order to change appearance of all, or some lines. For example in order to make lines for chapters in bold specify the following in your customization layer.

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="toc.line.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-weight">
    <xsl:when test="self::chapter | self::preface | self::appendix">bold</xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>normal</xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Name

toc.margin.properties — Margin properties used on Tables of Contents

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="toc.margin.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.minimum">0.5em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.optimum">1em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.maximum">2em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.minimum">0.5em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.optimum">1em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.maximum">2em</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

This attribute set is used on Tables of Contents. These attributes are set on the wrapper that surrounds the ToC block, not on each individual lines.

Name

bridgehead.in.toc — Should bridgehead elements appear in the TOC?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="bridgehead.in.toc" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, bridgeheads appear in the TOC. Note that this option is not fully supported and may be removed in a future version of the stylesheets.

Name

simplesect.in.toc — Should `simplesect` elements appear in the TOC?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="simplesect.in.toc" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, `simplesect`s appear in the TOC.

Name

generate.section.toc.level — Control depth of TOC generation in sections

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="generate.section.toc.level" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The *`generate.section.toc.level`* parameter controls the depth of section in which TOCs will be generated. Note that this is related to, but not the same as *`toc.section.depth`*, which controls the depth to which TOC entries will be generated in a given TOC.

If, for example, *`generate.section.toc.level`* is `3`, TOCs will be generated in first, second, and third level sections, but not in fourth level sections.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Processor Extensions

Name

arbortext.extensions — Enable Arbortext extensions?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="arbortext.extensions" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, Arbortext[1] extensions will be used.

This parameter can also affect which graphics file formats are supported

Name

axf.extensions — Enable XSL Formatter extensions?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="axf.extensions" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, XSL Formatter[1] extensions will be used. XSL Formatter extensions consists of PDF bookmarks, document information and better index processing.

This parameter can also affect which graphics file formats are supported

Name

fop.extensions — Enable FOP extensions for version 0.20.5 and earlier

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="fop.extensions" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, extensions intended for FOP[1] version 0.20.5 and earlier will be used. At present, this consists of PDF bookmarks.

This parameter can also affect which graphics file formats are supported

If you are using a version of FOP beyond version 0.20.5, then use the *`fop1.extensions`* instead.

Name

fop1.extensions — Enable extensions for FOP version 1 and later

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="fop1.extensions" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

[1] http://www.arbortext.com/
[1] http://www.antennahouse.com/
[1] http://xml.apache.org/fop/

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

If non-zero, extensions for FOP[1] version 1 and later will be used.

This parameter can also affect which graphics file formats are supported

The original *`fop.extensions`* should still be used for FOP version 0.20.5 and earlier.

Name

passivetex.extensions — Enable PassiveTeX extensions?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="passivetex.extensions" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, PassiveTeX[1] extensions will be used. At present, this consists of PDF bookmarks and sorted index terms.

This parameter can also affect which graphics file formats are supported

Name

tex.math.in.alt — TeX notation used for equations

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="tex.math.in.alt" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you want type math directly in TeX notation in equations, this parameter specifies notation used. Currently are supported two values -- `plain` and `latex`. Empty value means that you are not using TeX math at all.

Preferred way for including TeX alternative of math is inside of `textobject` element. Eg.:

```
<inlineequation>
<inlinemediaobject>
<imageobject>
<imagedata fileref="eq1.gif"/>
</imageobject>
<textobject><phrase>E=mc squared</phrase></textobject>
<textobject role="tex"><phrase>E=mc^2</phrase></textobject>
</inlinemediaobject>
</inlineequation>
```

If you are using `graphic` element, you can store TeX inside `alt` element:

```
<inlineequation>
<alt role="tex">a^2+b^2=c^2</alt>
<graphic fileref="a2b2c2.gif"/>
</inlineequation>
```

If you want use this feature, you should process your FO with PassiveTeX, which only supports TeX math notation. When calling stylsheet, don't forget to specify also passivetex.extensions=1.

[1] http://xml.apache.org/fop/
[1] http://users.ox.ac.uk/~rahtz/passivetex/

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

If you want equations in HTML, just process generated file `tex-math-equations.tex` by TeX or LaTeX. Then run dvi2bitmap program on result DVI file. You will get images for equations in your document.

Name

tex.math.delims — Should be equations outputed for processing by TeX automatically surrounded by math mode delimiters

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="tex.math.delims" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

For compatibility with DSSSL based DBTeXMath from Allin Cottrell you should set this parameter to 0.

Name

xep.extensions — Enable XEP extensions?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="xep.extensions" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, XEP[1] extensions will be used. XEP extensions consists of PDF bookmarks, document information and better index processing.

This parameter can also affect which graphics file formats are supported

[1] http://www.renderx.com/

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Stylesheet Extensions

Name

linenumbering.everyNth — Indicate which lines should be numbered

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="linenumbering.everyNth" select="'5'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If line numbering is enabled, everyNth line will be numbered.

Name

linenumbering.extension — Enable the line numbering extension

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="linenumbering.extension" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true, verbatim environments (elements that have the format='linespecific' notation attribute: address, literallayout, programlisting, screen, synopsis) that specify line numbering will have, surprise, line numbers.

Name

linenumbering.separator — Specify a separator between line numbers and lines

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="linenumbering.separator" select="' '"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The separator is inserted between line numbers and lines in the verbatim environment.

Name

linenumbering.width — Indicates the width of line numbers

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="linenumbering.width" select="'3'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If line numbering is enabled, line numbers will appear right justified in a field "width" characters wide.

Name

tablecolumns.extension — Enable the table columns extension function

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="tablecolumns.extension" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

The table columns extension function adjusts the widths of table columns in the HTML result to more accurately reflect the specifications in the CALS table.

Name

textinsert.extension — Enable the textinsert extension element

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="textinsert.extension" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The textinsert extension element inserts the contents of a a file into the result tree (as text).

Name

textdata.default.encoding — Default encoding of external text files which are included using textdata element

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="textdata.default.encoding" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Default encoding of external text files which are included using textdata element. This value is used only when you do not specify encoding by appropriate attribute directly on textdata. Default encoding (empty string) is interpreted as system default encoding.

Name

use.extensions — Enable extensions

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="use.extensions" select="'0'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, extensions may be used. Each extension is further controlled by its own parameter. But if `use.extensions` is zero, no extensions will be used.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Automatic labelling

Name

appendix.autolabel — Specifies the labeling format for Appendix titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="appendix.autolabel" select="'A'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If zero, then appendices will not be numbered. Otherwise appendices will be numbered, using the parameter value as the number format if the value matches one of the following:

1 or arabic
: Arabic numeration (1, 2, 3 ...).

A or upperalpha
: Uppercase letter numeration (A, B, C ...).

a or loweralpha
: Lowercase letter numeration (a, b, c ...).

I or upperroman
: Uppercase roman numeration (I, II, III ...).

i or lowerroman
: Lowercase roman letter numeration (i, ii, iii ...).

Any nonzero value other than the above will generate the default number format (upperalpha).

Name

chapter.autolabel — Specifies the labeling format for Chapter titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="chapter.autolabel" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If zero, then chapters will not be numbered. Otherwise chapters will be numbered, using the parameter value as the number format if the value matches one of the following:

1 or arabic
: Arabic numeration (1, 2, 3 ...).

A or upperalpha
: Uppercase letter numeration (A, B, C ...).

a or loweralpha
: Lowercase letter numeration (a, b, c ...).

I or upperroman
: Uppercase roman numeration (I, II, III ...).

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

i or lowerroman
: Lowercase roman letter numeration (i, ii, iii ...).

Any nonzero value other than the above will generate the default number format (arabic).

Name

part.autolabel — Specifies the labeling format for Part titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="part.autolabel" select="'I'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If zero, then parts will not be numbered. Otherwise parts will be numbered, using the parameter value as the number format if the value matches one of the following:

1 or arabic
: Arabic numeration (1, 2, 3 ...).

A or upperalpha
: Uppercase letter numeration (A, B, C ...).

a or loweralpha
: Lowercase letter numeration (a, b, c ...).

I or upperroman
: Uppercase roman numeration (I, II, III ...).

i or lowerroman
: Lowercase roman letter numeration (i, ii, iii ...).

Any nonzero value other than the above will generate the default number format (upperroman).

Name

reference.autolabel — Specifies the labeling format for Reference titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="reference.autolabel" select="'I'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If zero, then references will not be numbered. Otherwise references will be numbered, using the parameter value as the number format if the value matches one of the following:

1 or arabic
: Arabic numeration (1, 2, 3 ...).

A or upperalpha
: Uppercase letter numeration (A, B, C ...).

a or loweralpha
: Lowercase letter numeration (a, b, c ...).

I or upperroman
: Uppercase roman numeration (I, II, III ...).

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

i or lowerroman
: Lowercase roman letter numeration (i, ii, iii ...).

Any nonzero value other than the above will generate the default number format (upperroman).

Name

preface.autolabel — Specifices the labeling format for Preface titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="preface.autolabel" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If zero (default), then prefaces will not be numbered. Otherwise prefaces will be numbered, using the parameter value as the number format if the value matches one of the following:

1 or arabic
: Arabic numeration (1, 2, 3 ...).

A or upperalpha
: Uppercase letter numeration (A, B, C ...).

a or loweralpha
: Lowercase letter numeration (a, b, c ...).

I or upperroman
: Uppercase roman numeration (I, II, III ...).

i or lowerroman
: Lowercase roman letter numeration (i, ii, iii ...).

Any nonzero value other than the above will generate the default number format (arabic).

Name

section.autolabel — Are sections enumerated?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="section.autolabel" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), unlabeled sections will be enumerated.

Name

section.autolabel.max.depth — The deepest level of sections that are numbered.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="section.autolabel.max.depth" select="8"></xsl:param>
```

Description

When section numbering is turned on by the `section.autolabel` parameter, then this parameter controls the depth of section nesting that is numbered. Sections nested to a level deeper than this value will not be numbered.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

section.label.includes.component.label — Do section labels include the component label?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="section.label.includes.component.label" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), section labels are prefixed with the label of the component that contains them.

Name

label.from.part — Renumber chapters in each part?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="label.from.part" select="'0'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If *`label.from.part`* is non-zero, components (`chapter`s, `appendixe`s, etc.) will be numbered from 1 in each `part`. Otherwise, they will be numbered monotonically throughout each `book`.

Name

component.label.includes.part.label — Do component labels include the part label?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="component.label.includes.part.label" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), number labels for chapters, appendices, and other component elements are prefixed with the label of the part element that contains them. So you might see Chapter II.3 instead of Chapter 3. Also, the labels for formal elements such as table and figure will include the part label. If there is no part element container, then no prefix is generated.

This feature is most useful when the `label.from.part` parameter is turned on. In that case, there would be more than one chapter “1”, and the extra part label prefix will identify each chapter unambiguously.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

XSLT Processing

Name

rootid — Specify the root element to format

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="rootid" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If *rootid* is specified, it must be the value of an ID that occurs in the document being formatted. The entire document will be loaded and parsed, but formatting will begin at the element identified, rather than at the root. For example, this allows you to process only chapter 4 of a book.

Because the entire document is available to the processor, automatic numbering, cross references, and other dependencies are correctly resolved.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Meta/*Info

Name

make.single.year.ranges — Print single-year ranges (e.g., 1998-1999)

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="make.single.year.ranges" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, year ranges that span a single year will be printed in range notation (1998-1999) instead of discrete notation (1998, 1999).

Name

make.year.ranges — Collate copyright years into ranges?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="make.year.ranges" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, copyright years will be collated into ranges.

Name

author.othername.in.middle — Is `othername` in `author` a middle name?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="author.othername.in.middle" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), the `othername` of an `author` appears between the `firstname` and `surname`. Otherwise, `othername` is suppressed.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Reference Pages

Name

funcsynopsis.decoration — Decorate elements of a FuncSynopsis?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="funcsynopsis.decoration" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), elements of the FuncSynopsis will be decorated (e.g. bold or italic). The decoration is controlled by functions that can be redefined in a customization layer.

Name

funcsynopsis.style — What style of 'FuncSynopsis' should be generated?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="funcsynopsis.style">kr</xsl:param>
```

Description

If `funcsynopsis.style` is `ansi`, ANSI-style function synopses are generated for a `funcsynopsis`, otherwise K&R-style function synopses are generated.

Name

function.parens — Generate parens after a function?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="function.parens">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If not 0, the formatting of a `<function>` element will include generated parenthesis.

Name

refentry.generate.name — Output NAME header before 'RefName'(s)?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.generate.name" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), a "NAME" section title is output before the list of 'RefName's. This parameter and *`refentry.generate.title`* are mutually exclusive. This means that if you change this parameter to zero, you should set *`refentry.generate.title`* to 1 unless you want get quite strange output.

Name

refentry.generate.title — Output title before 'RefName'(s)?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.generate.title" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), the reference page title or first name is output before the list of 'RefName's. This parameter and *refentry.generate.name* are mutually exclusive. This means that if you change this parameter to 1, you should set *refentry.generate.name* to 0 unless you want get quite strange output.

Name

refentry.pagebreak — Start each refentry on a new page

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.pagebreak" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero (the default), each `refentry` element will start on a new page. If zero, a page break will not be generated between `refentry` elements. The exception is when the `refentry` elements are children of a `part` element, in which case the page breaks are always retained. That is because a `part` element does not generate a page-sequence for its children, so each `refentry` must start its own page-sequence.

Name

refentry.title.properties — Title properties for a refentry title

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="refentry.title.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-family">
    <xsl:value-of select="$title.font.family"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">18pt</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-weight">bold</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after">1em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="hyphenate">false</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="keep-with-next.within-column">always</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.minimum">0.8em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.optimum">1.0em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.maximum">1.2em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.optimum">0.5em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.minimum">0.4em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.maximum">0.6em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="start-indent"><xsl:value-of \
select="$title.margin.left"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Formatting properties applied to the title generated for the `refnamediv` part of output for `refentry` when the value of the *refentry.generate.title* parameter is non-zero. The font size is supplied by the appropriate *section.levelX.title.properties* attribute-set, computed from the location of the `refentry` in the section hierarchy.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Note

This parameter has no effect on the the title generated for the `refnamediv` part of output for `refentry` when the value of the *`refentry.generate.name`* parameter is non-zero. By default, that title is formatted with the same properties as the titles for all other first-level children of `refentry`.

Name

refentry.xref.manvolnum — Output `manvolnum` as part of `refentry` cross-reference?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.xref.manvolnum" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

if true (non-zero), the `manvolnum` is used when cross-referencing `refentry`s, either with `xref` or `citerefentry`.

Name

refclass.suppress — Suppress display of refclass contents?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refclass.suppress" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *`refclass.suppress`* is non-zero, then display of `refclass` contents is suppressed in output.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Tables

Name

default.table.width — The default width of tables

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="default.table.width" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If specified, this value will be used for the WIDTH attribute on tables that do not specify an alternate width (with the dbhtml processing instruction).

Name

nominal.table.width — The (absolute) nominal width of tables

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="nominal.table.width" select="'6in'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

In order to convert CALS column widths into HTML column widths, it is sometimes necessary to have an absolute table width to use for conversion of mixed absolute and relative widths. This value must be an absolute length (not a percentag).

Name

table.cell.padding

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="table.cell.padding">
  <xsl:attribute name="padding-left">2pt</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="padding-right">2pt</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="padding-top">2pt</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="padding-bottom">2pt</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

table.frame.border.thickness — Specifies the thickness of the frame border

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.frame.border.thickness" select="'0.5pt'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the thickness of the border on the table's frame.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

table.frame.border.style

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.frame.border.style" select="'solid'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

table.frame.border.color

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.frame.border.color" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

table.cell.border.thickness

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.cell.border.thickness" select="'0.5pt'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

table.cell.border.style

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.cell.border.style" select="'solid'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

table.cell.border.color

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.cell.border.color" select="''"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

FIXME:

Name

table.table.properties — Properties associated with a table

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="table.table.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="border-before-width.conditionality">retain</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="border-collapse">collapse</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The styling for tables. This parameter should really have been called `table.properties`, but that parameter name was inadvertantly established for the block-level properties of the table as a whole.

See also *`table.properties`*.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Linking

Name

current.docid — targetdoc identifier for the document being processed

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="current.docid" select="''"></xsl:param> \
```

Description

When olinks between documents are resolved for HTML output, the stylesheet can compute the relative path between the current document and the target document. The stylesheet needs to know the `targetdoc` identifiers for both documents, as they appear in the *`target.database.document`* database file. This parameter passes to the stylesheet the targetdoc identifier of the current document, since that identifier does not appear in the document itself.

This parameter can also be used for print output. If an olink's `targetdoc` id differs from the `current.docid`, then the stylesheet can append the target document's title to the generated olink text. That identifies to the reader that the link is to a different document, not the current document. See also *`olink.doctitle`* to enable that feature.

Name

collect.xref.targets — Controls whether cross reference data is collected

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="collect.xref.targets" select="'no'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

In order to resolve olinks efficiently, the stylesheets can generate an external data file containing information about all potential cross reference endpoints in a document. This parameter determines whether the collection process is run when the document is processed by the stylesheet. The default value is `no`, which means the data file is not generated during processing. The other choices are `yes`, which means the data file is created and the document is processed for output, and `only`, which means the data file is created but the document is not processed for output. See also *`targets.filename`*.

Name

insert.olink.page.number — Turns page numbers in olinks on and off

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="insert.olink.page.number">no</xsl:param>
```

Description

The value of this parameter determines if cross references made between documents with `olink` will include page number citations. In most cases this is only applicable to references in printed output.

The parameter has three possible values.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

no
: No page number references will be generated for olinks.

yes
: Page number references will be generated for all `olink` references. The style of page reference may be changed if an `xrefstyle` attribute is used.

maybe
: Page number references will not be generated for an `olink` element unless it has an `xrefstyle` attribute whose value specifies a page reference.

Olinks that point to targets within the same document are treated as `xref`s, and controlled by the *`insert.xref.page.number`* parameter.

Page number references for olinks to external documents can only be inserted if the information exists in the olink database. This means each olink target element (`div` or `obj`) must have a `page` attribute whose value is its page number in the target document. The XSL stylesheets are not able to extract that information during processing because pages have not yet been created in XSLT transformation. Only the XSL-FO processor knows what page each element is placed on. Therefore some postprocessing must take place to populate page numbers in the olink database.

Name

insert.olink.pdf.frag — Add fragment identifiers for links into PDF files

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="insert.olink.pdf.frag" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The value of this parameter determines whether the cross reference URIs to PDF documents made with `olink` will include fragment identifiers.

When forming a URI to link to a PDF document, a fragment identifier (typically a '#' followed by an id value) appended to the PDF filename can be used by the PDF viewer to open the PDF file to a location within the document instead of the first page. However, not all PDF files have id values embedded in them, and not all PDF viewers can handle fragment identifiers.

If *`insert.olink.pdf.frag`* is set to a non-zero value, then any olink targeting a PDF file will have the fragment identifier appended to the URI. The URI is formed by concatenating the value of the *`olink.base.uri`* parameter, the value of the `baseuri` attribute from the `document` element in the olink database with the matching `targetdoc` value, and the value of the `href` attribute for the targeted element in the olink database. The `href` attribute contains the fragment identifier.

If *`insert.olink.pdf.frag`* is set to zero (the default value), then the `href` attribute from the olink database is not appended to PDF olinks, so the fragment identifier is left off. A PDF olink is any olink for which the `baseuri` attribute from the matching `document` element in the olink database ends with '.pdf'. Any other olinks will still have the fragment identifier added.

Name

olink.base.uri — Base URI used in olink hrefs

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="olink.base.uri" select="''"></xsl:param> \
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

When cross reference data is collected for resolving olinks, it may be necessary to prepend a base URI to each target's href. This parameter lets you set that base URI when cross reference data is collected. This feature is needed when you want to link to a document that is processed without chunking. The output filename for such a document is not known to the XSL stylesheet; the only target information consists of fragment identifiers such as `#idref`. To enable the resolution of olinks between documents, you should pass the name of the HTML output file as the value of this parameter. Then the hrefs recorded in the cross reference data collection look like `outfile.html#idref`, which can be reached as links from other documents.

Name

olink.debug — Turn on debugging messages for olinks

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="olink.debug" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, then each olink will generate several messages about how it is being resolved during processing. This is useful when an olink does not resolve properly and the standard error messages are not sufficient to find the problem.

You may need to read through the olink XSL templates to understand the context for some of the debug messages.

Name

olink.doctitle — show the document title for external olinks?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="olink.doctitle" select="'no'"></xsl:param> \
```

Description

When olinks between documents are resolved, the generated text may not make it clear that the reference is to another document. It is possible for the stylesheets to append the other document's title to external olinks. For this to happen, two parameters must be set.

- This *`olink.doctitle`* parameter should be set to either `yes` or `maybe` to enable this feature.
- And you should also set the *`current.docid`* parameter to the document id for the document currently being processed for output.

Then if an olink's `targetdoc` id differs from the `current.docid` value, the stylesheet knows that it is a reference to another document and can append the target document's title to the generated olink text.

The text for the target document's title is copied from the olink database from the `ttl` element of the top-level `div` for that document. If that `ttl` element is missing or empty, no title is output.

The supported values for *`olink.doctitle`* are:

`yes`
: Always insert the title to the target document if it is not the current document.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

`no`
: Never insert the title to the target document, even if requested in an `xrefstyle` attribute.

`maybe`
: Only insert the title to the target document, if requested in an `xrefstyle` attribute.

An `xrefstyle` attribute may override the global setting for individual olinks. The following values are supported in an `xrefstyle` attribute using the `select:` syntax:

`docname`
: Insert the target document name for this olink using the `docname` gentext template, but only if the value of *`olink.doctitle`* is not `no`.

`docnamelong`
: Insert the target document name for this olink using the `docnamelong` gentext template, but only if the value of *`olink.doctitle`* is not `no`.

`nodocname`
: Omit the target document name even if the value of *`olink.doctitle`* is `yes`.

Another way of inserting the target document name for a single olink is to employ an `xrefstyle` attribute using the `template:` syntax. The `%o` placeholder (the letter o, not zero) in such a template will be filled in with the target document's title when it is processed. This will occur regardless of the value of *`olink.doctitle`*.

Note that prior to version 1.66 of the XSL stylesheets, the allowed values for this parameter were 0 and 1. Those values are still supported and mapped to 'no' and 'yes', respectively.

Name

olink.lang.fallback.sequence — look up translated documents if olink not found?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="olink.lang.fallback.sequence" select="''"></xsl:param> \
```

Description

This parameter defines a list of lang values to search among to resolve olinks.

Normally an olink tries to resolve to a document in the same language as the olink itself. The language of an olink is determined by its nearest ancestor element with a `lang` attribute, otherwise the value of the *`l10n.gentext.default.lang`* parameter.

An olink database can contain target data for the same document in multiple languages. Each set of data has the same value for the `targetdoc` attribute in the `document` element in the database, but with a different `lang` attribute value.

When an olink is being resolved, the target is first sought in the document with the same language as the olink. If no match is found there, then this parameter is consulted for additional languages to try.

The *`olink.lang.fallback.sequence`* must be a whitespace separated list of lang values to try. The first one with a match in the olink database is used. The default value is empty.

For example, a document might be written in German and contain an olink with `targetdoc="adminguide"`. When the document is processed, the processor first looks for a target dataset in the olink database starting with:

```
<document targetdoc="adminguide" lang="de">.
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

If there is no such element, then the *olink.lang.fallback.sequence* parameter is consulted. If its value is, for example, “fr en”, then the processor next looks for `targetdoc="adminguide" lang="fr"`, and then for `targetdoc="adminguide" lang="en"`. If there is still no match, it looks for `targetdoc="adminguide"` with no lang attribute.

This parameter is useful when a set of documents is only partially translated, or is in the process of being translated. If a target of an olink has not yet been translated, then this parameter permits the processor to look for the document in other languages. This assumes the reader would rather have a link to a document in a different language than to have a broken link.

Name

olink.properties — Properties associated with the cross-reference text of an olink.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="olink.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="show-destination">replace</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

This attribute set is applied to the `fo:basic-link` element of an olink. It is not applied to the optional page number or optional title of the external document.

Name

prefer.internal.olink — Prefer a local olink reference to an external reference

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="prefer.internal.olink" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you are re-using XML content modules in multiple documents, you may want to redirect some of your olinks. This parameter permits you to redirect an olink to the current document.

For example: you are writing documentation for a product, which includes 3 manuals: a little installation booklet (booklet.xml), a user guide (user.xml), and a reference manual (reference.xml). All 3 documents begin with the same introduction section (intro.xml) that contains a reference to the customization section (custom.xml) which is included in both user.xml and reference.xml documents.

How do you write the link to custom.xml in intro.xml so that it is interpreted correctly in all 3 documents?

- If you use xref, it will fail in user.xml.
- If you use olink (pointing to reference.xml), the reference in user.xml will point to the customization section of the reference manual, while it is actually available in user.xml.

If you set the *prefer.internal.olink* parameter to a non-zero value, then the processor will first look in the olink database for the olink's `targetptr` attribute value in document matching the *current.docid* parameter value. If it isn't found there, then it tries the document in the database with the `targetdoc` value that matches the olink's `targetdoc` attribute.

This feature permits an olink reference to resolve to the current document if there is an element with an id matching the olink's `targetptr` value. The current document's olink data must be included in the target database for this to work.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Caution

There is a potential for incorrect links if the same `id` attribute value is used for different content in different documents. Some of your olinks may be redirected to the current document when they shouldn't be. It is not possible to control individual olink instances.

Name

target.database.document — Name of master database file for resolving olinks

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="target.database.document" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

To resolve olinks between documents, the stylesheets use a master database document that identifies the target datafiles for all the documents within the scope of the olinks. This parameter value is the URI of the master document to be read during processing to resolve olinks. The default value is `olinkdb.xml`.

The data structure of the file is defined in the `targetdatabase.dtd` DTD. The database file provides the high level elements to record the identifiers, locations, and relationships of documents. The cross reference data for individual documents is generally pulled into the database using system entity references or XIncludes. See also *`targets.filename`*.

Name

targets.filename — Name of cross reference targets data file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="targets.filename" select="'target.db'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

In order to resolve olinks efficiently, the stylesheets can generate an external data file containing information about all potential cross reference endpoints in a document. This parameter lets you change the name of the generated file from the default name `target.db`. The name must agree with that used in the target database used to resolve olinks during processing. See also *`target.database.document`*.

Name

use.local.olink.style — Process olinks using xref style of current document

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="use.local.olink.style" select="0"></xsl:param> \
```

Description

When cross reference data is collected for use by olinks, the data for each potential target includes one field containing a completely assembled cross reference string, as if it were an xref generated in that document. Other fields record the separate title, number, and element name of each target. When an olink is formed to a target from another document, the olink resolves to that preassembled string by default. If the *`use.local.olink.style`* parameter is set to non-zero, then instead the cross ref-

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

erence string is formed again from the target title, number, and element name, using the stylesheet processing the targeting document. Then olinks will match the xref style in the targeting document rather than in the target document. If both documents are processed with the same stylesheet, then the results will be the same.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Cross References

Name

insert.xref.page.number — Turns page numbers in xrefs on and off

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="insert.xref.page.number">no</xsl:param>
```

Description

The value of this parameter determines if cross references (`xref`s) in printed output will include page number citations. It has three possible values.

no
: No page number references will be generated.

yes
: Page number references will be generated for all `xref` elements. The style of page reference may be changed if an `xrefstyle` attribute is used.

maybe
: Page number references will not be generated for an `xref` element unless it has an `xrefstyle` attribute whose value specifies a page reference.

Name

xref.properties — Properties associated with cross-reference text

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="xref.properties">
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

This attribute set is used to set properties on cross reference text.

Name

xref.label-title.separator — Punctuation or space separating label from title in xref

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="xref.label-title.separator">: </xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter allows you to control the punctuation of certain types of generated cross reference text. When cross reference text is generated for an `xref` or `olink` element using an `xrefstyle` attribute that makes use of the `select:` feature, and the selected components include both label and title, then the value of this parameter is inserted between label and title in the output.

Name

xref.label-page.separator — Punctuation or space separating label from page number in xref

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="xref.label-page.separator"><xsl:text> </xsl:text></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter allows you to control the punctuation of certain types of generated cross reference text. When cross reference text is generated for an `xref` or `olink` element using an `xrefstyle` attribute that makes use of the `select:` feature, and the selected components include both label and page but no title, then the value of this parameter is inserted between label and page number in the output. If a title is included, then other separators are used.

Name

xref.title-page.separator — Punctuation or space separating title from page number in xref

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="xref.title-page.separator"><xsl:text> </xsl:text></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter allows you to control the punctuation of certain types of generated cross reference text. When cross reference text is generated for an `xref` or `olink` element using an `xrefstyle` attribute that makes use of the `select:` feature, and the selected components include both title and page number, then the value of this parameter is inserted between title and page number in the output.

Name

insert.link.page.number — Turns page numbers in link elements on and off

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="insert.link.page.number">no</xsl:param>
```

Description

The value of this parameter determines if cross references using the `link` element in printed output will include standard page number citations. It has three possible values.

no
: No page number references will be generated.

yes
: Page number references will be generated for all `link` elements. The style of page reference may be changed if an `xrefstyle` attribute is used.

maybe
: Page number references will not be generated for a `link` element unless it has an `xrefstyle` attribute whose value specifies a page reference.

Although the `xrefstyle` attribute can be used to turn the page reference on or off, it cannot be used to control the formatting of the page number as it can in `xref`. In `link` it will always format with the style established by the gentext template with `name="page.citation"` in the `l:context name="xref"`.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Lists

Name

compact.list.item.spacing — What space do you want between list items (when spacing=compact)?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="compact.list.item.spacing">
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.optimum">0em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.minimum">0em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.maximum">0.2em</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Specify what spacing you want between each list item when `spacing` is “`compact`”.

Name

itemizedlist.properties — Properties that apply to each list-block generated by itemizedlist.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="itemizedlist.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="list.block.properties">
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Properties that apply to each fo:list-block generated by itemizedlist.

Name

itemizedlist.label.properties — Properties that apply to each label inside itemized list.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="itemizedlist.label.properties">
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Properties that apply to each label inside itemized list. E.g.:

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="itemizedlist.label.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="text-align">right</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Name

itemizedlist.label.width — The default width of the label (bullet) in an itemized list.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="itemizedlist.label.width" select="'1.0em'"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

Specifies the default width of the label (usually a bullet or other symbol) in an itemized list. You can override the default value on any particular list with the “dbfo” processing instruction using the “label-width” pseudoattribute.

Name

list.block.properties — Properties that apply to each list-block generated by list.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="list.block.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="provisional-label-separation">0.2em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="provisional-distance-between-starts">1.5em</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Properties that apply to each fo:list-block generated by itemizedlist/orderedlist.

Name

list.block.spacing — What spacing do you want before and after lists?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="list.block.spacing">
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.optimum">1em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.minimum">0.8em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.maximum">1.2em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.optimum">1em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.minimum">0.8em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.maximum">1.2em</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Specify the spacing required before and after a list. It is necessary to specify the space after a list block because lists can come inside of paras.

Name

list.item.spacing — What space do you want between list items?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="list.item.spacing">
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.optimum">1em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.minimum">0.8em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.maximum">1.2em</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Specify what spacing you want between each list item.

Name

orderedlist.properties — Properties that apply to each list-block generated by orderedlist.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="orderedlist.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="list.block.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="provisional-distance-between-starts">2em</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Properties that apply to each fo:list-block generated by orderedlist.

Name

orderedlist.label.properties — Properties that apply to each label inside ordered list.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="orderedlist.label.properties">
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Properties that apply to each label inside ordered list. E.g.:

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="orderedlist.label.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="text-align">right</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Name

orderedlist.label.width — The default width of the label (number) in an ordered list.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="orderedlist.label.width" select="'1.2em'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the default width of the label (usually a number or sequence of numbers) in an ordered list. You can override the default value on any particular list with the “dbfo” processing instruction using the “label-width” pseudoattribute.

Name

variablelist.max.termlength — Specifies the longest term in variablelists

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="variablelist.max.termlength">24</xsl:param>
```

Description

In variablelists, the `listitem` is indented to leave room for the `term` elements. That indent may be computed if it is not specified with a `termlength` attribute on the `variablelist` element.

The computation counts characters in the `term` elements in the list to find the longest term. However, some terms are very long and would produce extreme indents. This parameter lets you set a maximum character count. Any terms longer than the maximum would line wrap. The default value is 24.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

The character counts are converted to physical widths by multiplying by 0.50em. There will be some variability in how many actual characters fit in the space since some characters are wider than others.

Name

variablelist.term.separator — Text to separate `term`s within a multi-term `varlistentry`

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="variablelist.term.separator">, </xsl:param>
```

Description

When a `varlistentry` contains multiple `term` elements, the string specified in the value of the *`variablelist.term.separator`* parameter is placed after each `term` except the last.

Note

To generate a line break between multiple `term`s in a `varlistentry`, set a non-zero value for the *`variablelist.term.break.after`* parameter. If you do so, you may also want to set the value of the *`variablelist.term.separator`* parameter to an empty string (to suppress rendering of the default comma and space after each `term`).

Name

variablelist.term.break.after — Generate line break after each `term` within a multi-term `varlistentry`?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="variablelist.term.break.after">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

Set a non-zero value for the *`variablelist.term.break.after`* parameter to generate a line break between `term`s in a multi-term `varlistentry`.

Note

If you set a non-zero value for *`variablelist.term.break.after`*, you may also want to set the value of the *`variablelist.term.separator`* parameter to an empty string (to suppress rendering of the default comma and space after each `term`).

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

QAndASet

Name

qandadiv.autolabel — Are divisions in QAndASets enumerated?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="qandadiv.autolabel" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), unlabeled qandadivs will be enumerated.

Name

qanda.inherit.numeration — Does enumeration of QandASet components inherit the numeration of parent elements?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="qanda.inherit.numeration" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), numbered QandADiv elements and Questions and Answers inherit the numeration of the ancestors of the QandASet.

Name

qanda.defaultlabel — Sets the default for defaultlabel on QandASet.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="qanda.defaultlabel">number</xsl:param>
```

Description

If no defaultlabel attribute is specified on a QandASet, this value is used. It must be one of the legal values for the defaultlabel attribute.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Bibliography

Name

biblioentry.item.separator — Text to separate bibliography entries

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="biblioentry.item.separator">. </xsl:param>
```

Description

Text to separate bibliography entries

Name

bibliography.collection — Name of the bibliography collection file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="bibliography.collection" \
select="'http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/bibliography/bibliography.xml'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Maintaining bibliography entries across a set of documents is tedious, time consuming, and error prone. It makes much more sense, usually, to store all of the bibliography entries in a single place and simply "extract" the ones you need in each document.

That's the purpose of the *`bibliography.collection`* parameter. To setup a global bibliography "database", follow these steps:

First, create a stand-alone bibliography document that contains all of the documents that you wish to reference. Make sure that each bibliography entry (whether you use `biblioentry` or `bibliomixed`) has an ID.

My global bibliography, `~/bibliography.xml` begins like this:

```
<!DOCTYPE bibliography
  PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
  "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<bibliography><title>References</title>

<bibliomixed id="xml-rec"><abbrev>XML 1.0</abbrev>Tim Bray,
Jean Paoli, C. M. Sperberg-McQueen, and Eve Maler, editors.
<citetitle><ulink url="http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml">Extensible Markup
Language (XML) 1.0 Second Edition</ulink></citetitle>.
World Wide Web Consortium, 2000.
</bibliomixed>

<bibliomixed id="xml-names"><abbrev>Namespaces</abbrev>Tim Bray,
Dave Hollander,
and Andrew Layman, editors.
<citetitle><ulink url="http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml-names/">Namespaces in
XML</ulink></citetitle>.
World Wide Web Consortium, 1999.
</bibliomixed>

<!-- ... -->
</bibliography>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

When you create a bibliography in your document, simply provide *empty* `bibliomixed` entries for each document that you wish to cite. Make sure that these elements have the same ID as the corresponding “real” entry in your global bibliography.

For example:

```
<bibliography><title>Bibliography</title>

<bibliomixed id="xml-rec"/>
<bibliomixed id="xml-names"/>
<bibliomixed id="DKnuth86">Donald E. Knuth. <citetitle>Computers and
Typesetting: Volume B, TeX: The Program</citetitle>. Addison-Wesley,
1986.  ISBN 0-201-13437-3.
</bibliomixed>
<bibliomixed id="relaxng"/>

</bibliography>
```

Note that it's perfectly acceptable to mix entries from your global bibliography with “normal” entries. You can use `xref` or other elements to cross-reference your bibliography entries in exactly the same way you do now.

Finally, when you are ready to format your document, simply set the *`bibliography.collection`* parameter (in either a customization layer or directly through your processor's interface) to point to your global bibliography.

The stylesheets will format the bibliography in your document as if all of the entries referenced appeared there literally.

Name

bibliography.numbered — Should bibliography entries be numbered?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="bibliography.numbered" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero bibliography entries will be numbered

Name

biblioentry.properties — To set the style for biblioentry.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="biblioentry.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="normal.para.spacing">
  <xsl:attribute name="start-indent">0.5in</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="text-indent">-0.5in</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

How do you want biblioentry styled?

Set the font-size, weight, space-above and space-below, indents, etc. to the style required

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Glossary

Name

glossterm.auto.link — Generate links from glossterm to glossentry automaticaly?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="glossterm.auto.link" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true, a link will be automatically created from glossterm to glossentry for that glossary term. This is usefull when your glossterm names are consistent and you don't want to add links manually.

If there is `linkend` on `glossterm` then is used instead of autogeneration of link.

Name

firstterm.only.link — Does automatic glossterm linking only apply to firstterms?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="firstterm.only.link" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If true, only `firstterm`s will be automatically linked to the glossary. If glossary linking is not enabled, this parameter has no effect.

Name

glossary.collection — Name of the glossary collection file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="glossary.collection" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Glossaries maintained independently across a set of documents are likely to become inconsistent unless considerable effort is expended to keep them in sync. It makes much more sense, usually, to store all of the glossary entries in a single place and simply “extract” the ones you need in each document.

That's the purpose of the *`glossary.collection`* parameter. To setup a global glossary “database”, follow these steps:

Setting Up the Glossary Database

First, create a stand-alone glossary document that contains all of the entries that you wish to reference. Make sure that each glossary entry has an ID.

Here's an example glossary:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE glossary
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
  PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
  "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<glossary>
<glossaryinfo>
<editor><firstname>Eric</firstname><surname>Raymond</surname></editor>
<title>Jargon File 4.2.3 (abridged)</title>
<releaseinfo>Just some test data</releaseinfo>
</glossaryinfo>

<glossdiv><title>0</title>

<glossentry>
<glossterm>0</glossterm>
<glossdef>
<para>Numeric zero, as opposed to the letter `O' (the 15th letter of
the English alphabet). In their unmodified forms they look a lot
alike, and various kluges invented to make them visually distinct have
compounded the confusion. If your zero is center-dotted and letter-O
is not, or if letter-O looks almost rectangular but zero looks more
like an American football stood on end (or the reverse), you're
probably looking at a modern character display (though the dotted zero
seems to have originated as an option on IBM 3270 controllers). If
your zero is slashed but letter-O is not, you're probably looking at
an old-style ASCII graphic set descended from the default typewheel on
the venerable ASR-33 Teletype (Scandinavians, for whom /O is a letter,
curse this arrangement). (Interestingly, the slashed zero long
predates computers; Florian Cajori's monumental "A History of
Mathematical Notations" notes that it was used in the twelfth and
thirteenth centuries.) If letter-O has a slash across it and the zero
does not, your display is tuned for a very old convention used at IBM
and a few other early mainframe makers (Scandinavians curse <emphasis>this</emphasis>
arrangement even more, because it means two of their letters collide).
Some Burroughs/Unisys equipment displays a zero with a <emphasis>reversed</emphasis>
slash. Old CDC computers rendered letter O as an unbroken oval and 0
as an oval broken at upper right and lower left. And yet another
convention common on early line printers left zero unornamented but
added a tail or hook to the letter-O so that it resembled an inverted
Q or cursive capital letter-O (this was endorsed by a draft ANSI
standard for how to draw ASCII characters, but the final standard
changed the distinguisher to a tick-mark in the upper-left corner).
Are we sufficiently confused yet?</para>
</glossdef>
</glossentry>

<glossentry>
<glossterm>1TBS</glossterm>
<glossdef>
<para role="accidence">
<phrase role="pronounce"></phrase>
<phrase role="partsofspeach">n</phrase>
</para>
<para>The "One True Brace Style"</para>
<glossseealso>indent style</glossseealso>
</glossdef>
</glossentry>

<!-- ... -->

</glossdiv>

<!-- ... -->

</glossary>
```

Marking Up Glossary Terms

That takes care of the glossary database, now you have to get the entries into your document. Unlike bibliography entries, which can be empty, creating “placeholder” glossary entries would be very tedious. So instead, support for `glossary.collection` relies on implicit linking.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

In your source document, simply use `firstterm` and `glossterm` to identify the terms you wish to have included in the glossary. The stylesheets assume that you will either set the `baseform` attribute correctly, or that the content of the element exactly matches a term in your glossary.

If you're using a *`glossary.collection`*, don't make explicit links on the terms in your document.

So, in your document, you might write things like this:

```
<para>This is dummy text, without any real meaning.
The point is simply to reference glossary terms like <glossterm>0</glossterm>
and the <firstterm baseform="1TBS">One True Brace Style (1TBS)</firstterm>.
The <glossterm>1TBS</glossterm>, as you can probably imagine, is a nearly
religious issue.</para>
```

If you set the *`firstterm.only.link`* parameter, only the terms marked with `firstterm` will be links. Otherwise, all the terms will be linked.

Marking Up the Glossary

The glossary itself has to be identified for the stylesheets. For lack of a better choice, the `role` is used. To identify the glossary as the target for automatic processing, set the role to "`auto`". The title of this glossary (and any other information from the `glossaryinfo` that's rendered by your stylesheet) will be displayed, but the entries will come from the database.

Unfortunately, the glossary can't be empty, so you must put in at least one `glossentry`. The content of this entry is irrelevant, it will not be rendered:

```
<glossary role="auto">
<glossentry>
<glossterm>Irrelevant</glossterm>
<glossdef>
<para>If you can see this, the document was processed incorrectly. Use
the <parameter>glossary.collection</parameter> parameter.</para>
</glossdef>
</glossentry>
</glossary>
```

What about glossary divisions? If your glossary database has glossary divisions *and* your automatic glossary contains at least one `glossdiv`, the automic glossary will have divisions. If the `glossdiv` is missing from either location, no divisions will be rendered.

Glossary entries (and divisions, if appropriate) in the glossary will occur in precisely the order they occur in your database.

Formatting the Document

Finally, when you are ready to format your document, simply set the *`glossary.collection`* parameter (in either a customization layer or directly through your processor's interface) to point to your global glossary.

The stylesheets will format the glossary in your document as if all of the entries implicilty referenced appeared there literally.

Limitations

Glossary cross-references *within the glossary* are not supported. For example, this *will not* work:

```
<glossentry>
<glossterm>gloss-1</glossterm>
<glossdef><para>A description that references <glossterm>gloss-2</glossterm>.</para>
<glossseealso>gloss-2</glossseealso>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
</glossdef>
</glossentry>
```

If you put glossary cross-references in your glossary that way, you'll get the cryptic error: `Warning: glossary.collection specified, but there are 0 automatic glossaries`.

Instead, you must do two things:

1. Markup your glossary using `glossseealso`:

```
<glossentry>
<glossterm>gloss-1</glossterm>
<glossdef><para>A description that references <glossterm>gloss-2</glossterm>.</para>
<glossseealso>gloss-2</glossseealso>
</glossdef>
</glossentry>
```

2. Make sure there is at least one `glossterm` reference to *gloss-2 in your document*. The easiest way to do that is probably within a `remark` in your automatic glossary:

```
<glossary role="auto">
<remark>Make sure there's a reference to <glossterm>gloss-2</glossterm>.</remark>
<glossentry>
<glossterm>Irrelevant</glossterm>
<glossdef>
<para>If you can see this, the document was processed incorrectly. Use
the <parameter>glossary.collection</parameter> parameter.</para>
</glossdef>
</glossentry>
</glossary>
```

Name

glossterm.separation — Separation between glossary terms and descriptions in list mode

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="glossterm.separation" select="'0.25in'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the separation between glossary terms and descriptions when glossarys are presented using lists.

Name

glossterm.width — Width of glossterm in list presentation mode

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="glossterm.width" select="'2in'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter specifies the width reserved for glossary terms when a list presentation is used.

Name

glossary.as.blocks — Present glossarys using blocks instead of lists?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="glossary.as.blocks" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, `glossary`s will be formatted as blocks.

If you have long `glossterm`s, proper list markup in the FO case may produce unattractive lists. By setting this parameter, you can force the stylesheets to produce block markup instead of proper lists.

You can override this setting with a processing instruction as the child of `glossary`: `<?dbfo glossary-presentation="blocks">` or `<?dbfo glossary-presentation="list">`

Name

glosslist.as.blocks — Use blocks for glosslists?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="glosslist.as.blocks" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

See *`glossary.as.blocks`*.

Name

glossentry.show.acronym — Display `glossentry` acronyms?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="glossentry.show.acronym" select="'no'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

A setting of “yes” means they should be displayed; “no” means they shouldn't. If “primary” is used, then they are shown as the primary text for the entry.

Note

This setting controls both `acronym` and `abbrev` elements in the `glossentry`.

Name

glossary.sort — Sort glossentry elements?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="glossary.sort" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, then the glossentry elements within a glossary, glossdiv, or glosslist are sorted on the glossterm, using the current lang setting. If zero (the default), then glossentry elements are not sorted and are presented in document order.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Miscellaneous

Name

formal.procedures — Selects formal or informal procedures

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="formal.procedures" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Formal procedures are numbered and always have a title.

Name

formal.title.placement — Specifies where formal object titles should occur

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="formal.title.placement">
figure before
example before
equation before
table before
procedure before
task before
</xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies where formal object titles should occur. For each formal object type (`figure`, `example`, `equation`, `table`, and `procedure`) you can specify either the keyword “`before`” or “`after`”.

Name

runinhead.default.title.end.punct — Default punctuation character on a run-in-head

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="runinhead.default.title.end.punct" select="'.'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

runinhead.title.end.punct — Characters that count as punctuation on a run-in-head

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="runinhead.title.end.punct" select="'.!?:'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

show.comments — Display `comment` elements?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="show.comments">1</xsl:param>
```

Description

If true (non-zero), comments will be displayed, otherwise they are suppressed. Comments here refers to the `comment` element, which will be renamed `remark` in DocBook V4.0, not XML comments (<-- like this -->) which are unavailable.

Name

punct.honorific — Punctuation after an honorific in a personal name.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="punct.honorific" select="'.'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter specifies the punctuation that should be added after an honorific in a personal name.

Name

segmentedlist.as.table — Format segmented lists as tables?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="segmentedlist.as.table" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, `segmentedlist`s will be formatted as tables.

Name

variablelist.as.blocks — Format `variablelist`s lists as blocks?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="variablelist.as.blocks" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, `variablelist`s will be formatted as blocks.

If you have long terms, proper list markup in the FO case may produce unattractive lists. By setting this parameter, you can force the stylesheets to produce block markup instead of proper lists.

You can override this setting with a processing instruction as the child of `variablelist`: `<?dbfo list-presentation="blocks">` or `<?dbfo list-presentation="list">`.

When using `list-presentation="list"`, you can also control the amount of space used for the `term`s with the `<?dbfo term-width=".25in">` processing instruction, the `termlength`

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

attribute on `variablelist`, or allow the stylesheets to attempt to calculate the amount of space to leave based on the number of letters in the longest term.

```
<variablelist>
      <?dbfo list-presentation="list"?>
      <?dbfo term-width="1.5in"?>
      <?dbhtml list-presentation="table"?>
      <?dbhtml term-width="1.5in"?>
      <varlistentry>
        <term>list</term>
        <listitem>
              <para>
                Formatted as a list even if variablelist.as.blocks is set to 1.
              </para>
        </listitem>
      </varlistentry>
</variablelist>
```

Name

blockquote.properties — To set the style for block quotations.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="blockquote.properties">
<xsl:attribute name="margin-left">0.5in</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="margin-right">0.5in</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="space-after.minimum">0.5em</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="space-after.optimum">1em</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="space-after.maximum">2em</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The *`blockquote.properties`* attribute set specifies the formating properties of block quotations.

Name

ulink.show — Display URLs after `ulink`s?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="ulink.show" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, the URL of each `ULink` will appear after the text of the link. If the text of the link and the URL are identical, the URL is suppressed.

Name

ulink.footnotes — Generate footnotes for `ULink`s?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="ulink.footnotes" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, the URL of each `ULink` will appear as a footnote.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

ulink.hyphenate — Allow URLs to be automatically hyphenated

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="ulink.hyphenate" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If not empty, the specified character (or more generally, content) is added to URLs after every character included in the string in the *`ulink.hyphenate.chars`* parameter (default is "/"). If the character in this parameter is a Unicode soft hyphen (0x00AD) or Unicode zero-width space (0x200B), some FO processors will be able to reasonably hyphenate long URLs.

As of 28 Jan 2002, discretionary hyphens are more widely and correctly supported than zero-width spaces for this purpose.

Name

ulink.hyphenate.chars — List of characters to allow ulink URLs to be automatically hyphenated on

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="ulink.hyphenate.chars" select="'/'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If the *`ulink.hyphenate`* is not empty, then hyphenation of ulinks is turned on, and any character contained in this parameter is treated as an allowable hyphenation point.

The default value is "/", but the parameter could be customized to contain other URL characters, as for example:

```
<xsl:param name="ulink.hyphenate.chars">:/@&?.#</xsl:param>
```

Name

shade.verbatim — Should verbatim environments be shaded?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="shade.verbatim" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

In the FO stylesheet, if this parameter is non-zero then the shade.verbatim.style properties will be applied to verbatim environments.

In the HTML stylesheet, this parameter is now deprecated. Use CSS instead.

Name

shade.verbatim.style — Properties that specify the style of shaded verbatim listings

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="shade.verbatim.style">
  <xsl:attribute name="border">0</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="bgcolor">#E0E0E0</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

hyphenate.verbatim — Should verbatim environments be hyphenated on space characters?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="hyphenate.verbatim" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If the lines of program listing are too long to fit into one line it is quite common to split them at space and indicite by hook arrow that code continues on the next line. You can turn on this behaviour for `programlisting`, `screen` and `synopsis` elements by using this parameter.

Note that you must also enable line wrapping for verbatim environments and select appropriate hyphenation character (e.g. hook arrow). This can be done using *`monospace.verbatim.properties`* attribute set:

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="monospace.verbatim.properties"
                   use-attribute-sets="verbatim.properties monospace.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="wrap-option">wrap</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="hyphenation-character">&#x25BA;</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

For a list of arrows available in Unicode see http://www.unicode.org/charts/PDF/U2190.pdf and http://www.unicode.org/charts/PDF/U2900.pdf and make sure that selected character is available in the font you are using for verbatim environments.

Name

hyphenate.verbatim.characters — List of characters after which line break can occur in listings

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="hyphenate.verbatim.characters" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If you enable *`hyphenate.verbatim`* line breaks are allowed only on space characters. If this is not enough for your document, you can specify list of additional characters after which line break is allowed in this parameter.

Name

use.svg — Allow SVG in the result tree?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="use.svg" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, SVG will be considered an acceptable image format. SVG is passed through to the result tree, so correct rendering of the resulting diagram depends on the formatter (FO processor or web browser) that is used to process the output from the stylesheet.

Name

use.role.as.xrefstyle — Use `role` attribute for `xrefstyle` on `xref`?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="use.role.as.xrefstyle" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, the `role` attribute on `xref` will be used to select the cross reference style. The DocBook Technical Committee[1] recently added an `xrefstyle` attribute for this purpose. If the `xrefstyle` attribute is present, `role` will be ignored, regardless of this setting.

Until an official DocBook release that includes the new attribute, this flag allows `role` to serve that purpose.

Example

The following small stylesheet shows how to configure the stylesheets to make use of the cross reference style:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
                version="1.0">

<xsl:import href="../xsl/html/docbook.xsl"/>

<xsl:output method="html"/>

<xsl:param name="local.l10n.xml" select="document('')"/>
<l:i18n xmlns:l="http://docbook.sourceforge.net/xmlns/l10n/1.0">
  <l:l10n xmlns:l="http://docbook.sourceforge.net/xmlns/l10n/1.0" language="en">
   <l:context name="xref">
      <l:template name="chapter" style="title" text="Chapter %n, %t"/>
      <l:template name="chapter" text="Chapter %n"/>
    </l:context>
  </l:l10n>
</l:i18n>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

With this stylesheet, the cross references in the following document:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE book PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.2//EN"
                    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.2/docbookx.dtd">
<book id="book"><title>Book</title>
```

[1] http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
<preface>
<title>Preface</title>

<para>Normal: <xref linkend="ch1"/>.</para>
<para>Title: <xref xrefstyle="title" linkend="ch1"/>.</para>

</preface>

<chapter id="ch1">
<title>First Chapter</title>

<para>Irrelevant.</para>

</chapter>
</book>
```

will appear as:

Normal: Chapter 1.

Title: Chapter 1, *First Chapter*.

Name

menuchoice.separator — Separator between items of a `menuchoice` other than `guimenuitem` and `guisubmenu`

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="menuchoice.separator" select="'+'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Separator used to connect items of a `menuchoice` other than `guimenuitem` and `guisubmenu`. The latter elements are linked with *`menuchoice.menu.separator`*.

Name

menuchoice.menu.separator — Separator between items of a `menuchoice` with `guimenuitem` or `guisubmenu`

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="menuchoice.menu.separator">   </xsl:param>
```

Description

Separator used to connect items of a `menuchoice` with `guimenuitem` or `guisubmenu`. Other elements are linked with *`menuchoice.separator`*.

The default value is →, which is the → (right arrow) character entity. The current FOP (0.20.5) requires setting the font-family explicitly.

The default value also includes spaces around the arrow, which will allow a line to break. Replace the spaces with   (nonbreaking space) if you don't want those spaces to break.

Name

default.float.class — Specifies the default float class

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="default.float.class">
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="contains($stylesheet.result.type,'html')">left</xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>before</xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

footnote.number.format — Identifies the format used for footnote numbers

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="footnote.number.format" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The *`footnote.number.format`* specifies the format to use for footnote numeration (1, i, I, a, or A).

Name

table.footnote.number.format — Identifies the format used for footnote numbers in tables

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.footnote.number.format" select="'a'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The *`table.footnote.number.format`* specifies the format to use for footnote numeration (1, i, I, a, or A) in tables.

Name

footnote.number.symbols — Special characters to use as footnote markers

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="footnote.number.symbols" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If *`footnote.number.symbols`* is not the empty string, footnotes will use the characters it contains as footnote symbols. For example, “*†‡◊✠” will identify footnotes with “*”, “†”, “‡”, “◊”, and “✠”. If there are more footnotes than symbols, the stylesheets will fall back to numbered footnotes using *`footnote.number.format`*.

The use of symbols for footnotes depends on the ability of your processor (or browser) to render the symbols you select. Not all systems are capable of displaying the full range of Unicode characters. If

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

the quoted characters in the preceding paragraph are not displayed properly, that's a good indicator that you may have trouble using those symbols for footnotes.

Name

table.footnote.number.symbols — Special characters to use a footnote markers in tables

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.footnote.number.symbols" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If *table.footnote.number.symbols* is not the empty string, table footnotes will use the characters it contains as footnote symbols. For example, “*†‡◊✠” will identify footnotes with “*”, “†”, “‡”, “◊”, and “✠”. If there are more footnotes than symbols, the stylesheets will fall back to numbered footnotes using *table.footnote.number.format*.

The use of symbols for footnotes depends on the ability of your processor (or browser) to render the symbols you select. Not all systems are capable of displaying the full range of Unicode characters. If the quoted characters in the preceding paragraph are not displayed properly, that's a good indicator that you may have trouble using those symbols for footnotes.

Name

footnote.properties — Properties applied to each footnote body

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="footnote.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-family"><xsl:value-of \
select="$body.fontset"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size"><xsl:value-of \
select="$footnote.font.size"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-weight">normal</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-style">normal</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="text-align"><xsl:value-of \
select="$alignment"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="start-indent">0pt</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="text-indent">0pt</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

This attribute set is applied to the footnote-block for each footnote. It can be used to set the font-size, font-family, and other inheritable properties that will be applied to all footnotes.

Name

table.footnote.properties — Properties applied to each table footnote body

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="table.footnote.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-family"><xsl:value-of \
select="$body.fontset"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size"><xsl:value-of \
select="$footnote.font.size"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-weight">normal</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-style">normal</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before">2pt</xsl:attribute>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
  <xsl:attribute name="text-align"><xsl:value-of \
select="$alignment"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

This attribute set is applied to the footnote-block for each table footnote. It can be used to set the font-size, font-family, and other inheritable properties that will be applied to all table footnotes.

Name

footnote.mark.properties — Properties applied to each footnote mark

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="footnote.mark.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">75%</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-weight">normal</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-style">normal</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

This attribute set is applied to the footnote mark used for each footnote. It should contain only inline properties.

The property to make the mark a superscript is contained in the footnote template itself, because the current version of FOP reports an error if baseline-shift is used.

Name

footnote.sep.leader.properties — Properties associated with a procedure

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="footnote.sep.leader.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="color">black</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="leader-pattern">rule</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="leader-length">1in</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The styling for the rule line that separates the footnotes from the body text. These are properties applied to the fo:leader used as the separator.

If you want to do more than just set properties on the leader element, then you can customize the template named `footnote.separator` in `fo/pagesetup.xsl`.

Name

xref.with.number.and.title — Use number and title in cross references

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="xref.with.number.and.title" select="1"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

FIXME:

Name

superscript.properties — Properties associated with superscripts

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="superscript.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">75%</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Specifies styling properties for superscripts.

Name

subscript.properties — Properties associated with subscripts

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="subscript.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">75%</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Specifies styling properties for subscripts.

Name

pgwide.properties — Properties to make a figure or table page wide.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="pgwide.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="start-indent">0pt</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

This attribute set is used to set the properties that make a figure or table "page wide" in fo output. It comes into effect when an attribute `pgwide="1"` is used.

By default, it sets *`start-indent`* to `0pt`. In a stylesheet that sets the parameter *`body.start.indent`* to a non-zero value in order to indent body text, this attribute set can be used to outdent pgwide figures to the left margin.

If a document uses a multi-column page layout, then this attribute set could try setting *`span`* to a value of `all`. However, this may not work with some processors because a span property must be on an fo:block that is a direct child of fo:flow. It may work in some processors anyway.

Name

highlight.source — Should be content of `programlisting` syntactically highlighted?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="highlight.source" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

When this parameter is non-zero, the stylesheets will try to do syntax highlighting in content of programlisting element.

In order to use this extension, you must add `xslthl.jar` into your Java classpath. You can download this software from http://sourceforge.net/projects/xslthl.

Configuration of syntax highlighting is stored inside `highlighting/xslthl-config.xml` file. Java property `xslthl.config` must be pointing to this file using URL.

This extension is known to work with Saxon 6.5.x. When using syntax highlighting, do not forget to modify your classpath and point to the configuration file using property. Modified Saxon command can look like:

```
java -cp c:\batch\;…;c:\path\to\xslthl.jar \
-Dxslthl.config=file:///c:/docbook-xsl/highlighting/xslthl-config.xml … \
com.icl.saxon.StyleSheet …
```

You can specify language for each programlisting using `language` attribute. Parameter *`highlighting.default.language`* can be used for specifying language to be used for programlistings without `language` attribute.

Name

highlight.default.language — Default language of programlisting

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="highlight.default.language" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This language is used when there is no language attribute on programlisting.

Name

email.delimiters.enabled — Generate delimiters around email addresses?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="email.delimiters.enabled">1</xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, delimiters[1] are generated around e-mail addresses (the output of the `email` element).

[1] For delimiters, the stylesheets are currently hard-coded to output angle brackets.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Graphics

Name

graphic.default.extension — Default extension for graphic filenames

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="graphic.default.extension"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If a `graphic` or `mediaobject` includes a reference to a filename that does not include an extension, and the `format` attribute is *unspecified*, the default extension will be used.

Name

default.image.width — The default width of images

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="default.image.width" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If specified, this value will be used for the `width` attribute on images that do not specify any viewport dimensions[1].

Name

preferred.mediaobject.role — Select which mediaobject to use based on this value of an object's `role` attribute.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="preferred.mediaobject.role"></xsl:param>
```

Description

A mediaobject may contain several objects such as imageobjects. If the parameter *`use.role.for.mediaobject`* is non-zero, then the `role` attribute on `imageobject`s and other objects within a `mediaobject` container will be used to select which object will be used. If one of the objects has a role value that matches the preferred.mediaobject.role parameter, then it has first priority for selection. If more than one has such a role value, the first one is used.

See the *`use.role.for.mediaobject`* parameter for the sequence of selection.

Name

use.role.for.mediaobject — Use `role` attribute value for selecting which of several objects within a mediaobject to use.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="use.role.for.mediaobject" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

[1] http://docbook.org/tdg/en/html/imagedata.html#viewport.area

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

If non-zero, the `role` attribute on `imageobject`s or other objects within a `mediaobject` container will be used to select which object will be used.

The order of selection when then parameter is non-zero is:

1. If the stylesheet parameter *`preferred.mediaobject.role`* has a value, then the object whose role equals that value is selected.
2. Else if an object's role attribute has a value of `html` for HTML processing or `fo` for FO output, then the first of such objects is selected.
3. Else the first suitable object is selected.

If the value of *`use.role.for.mediaobject`* is zero, then role attributes are not considered and the first suitable object with or without a role value is used.

Name

ignore.image.scaling — Tell the stylesheets to ignore the author's image scaling attributes

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="ignore.image.scaling" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, the scaling attributes on graphics and media objects are ignored.

Name

img.src.path — Path to HTML image files

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="img.src.path"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Add a path prefix to each HTML `img` or FO `fo:external-graphics` element's `src` attribute. This path could relative to the directory where the HTML/FO files are created, or it could be an absolute URI. The default value is empty. Be sure to include a trailing slash if needed.

This prefix is not applied to any filerefs that start with "/" or contain "//:".

Name

keep.relative.image.uris — Should image URIs be resolved against xml:base?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="keep.relative.image.uris" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zeor, relative URIs (in, for example fileref attributes) will be used in the generated output. Otherwise, the URIs will be made absolute with respect to the base URI.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Note that the stylesheets calculate (and use) the absolute form for some purposes, this only applies to the resulting output.

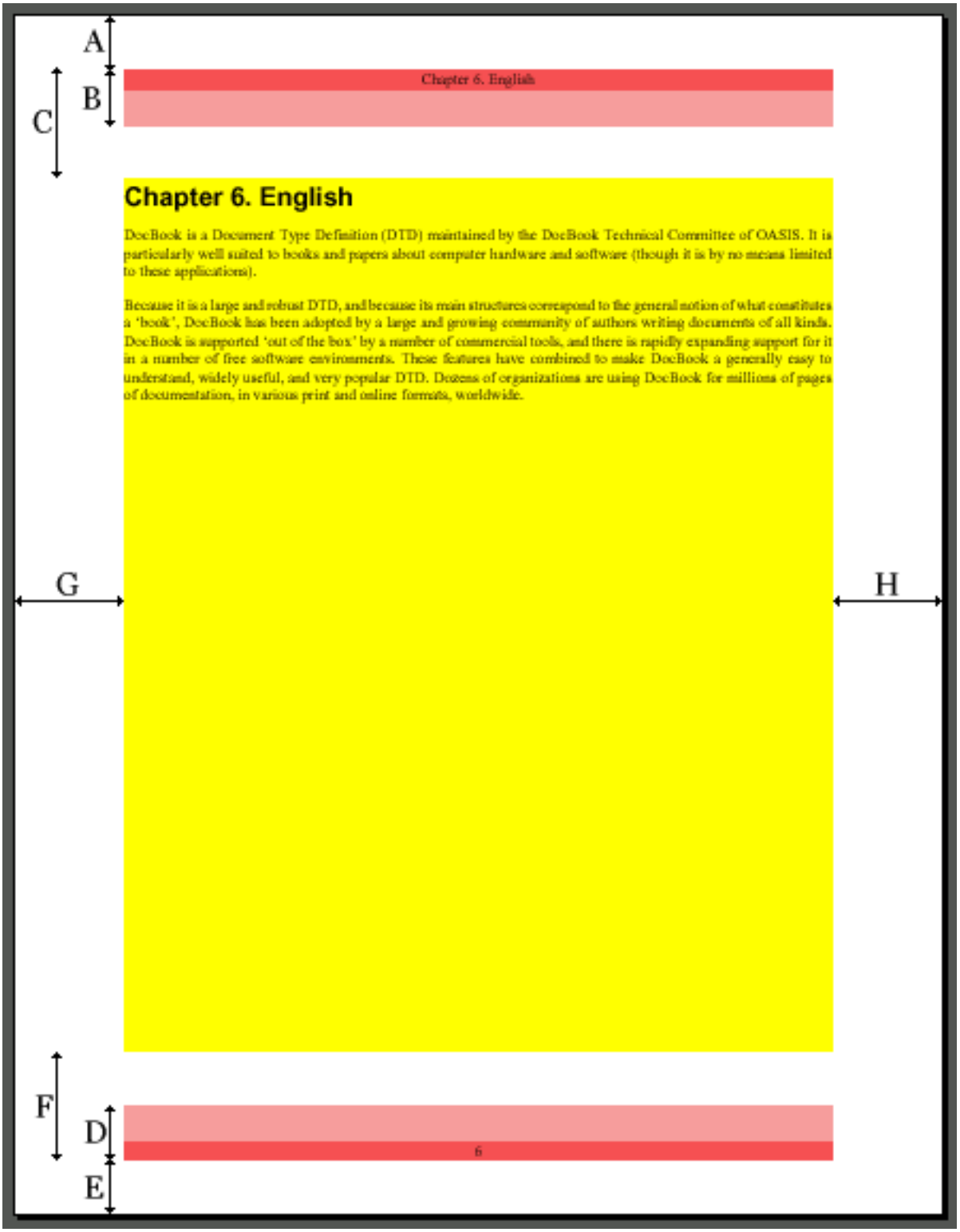
XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Pagination and General Styles

Understanding XSL FO Margins

To make sense of the parameters in this section, it's useful to consider Figure 1, “Page Model”.

Figure 1. Page Model



XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

First, let's consider the regions on the page.

The white region is the physical page. Its dimensions are determined by the *`page.height`* and *`page.width`* parameters.

The yellow region is the region-body. The size and placement of the region body is constrained by the dimensions labelled in the figure.

The pink region at the top of the page is the region-before. The darker area inside the region-before is the header text. In XSL, the default display alignment for a region is `before`, but the DocBook stylesheets still explicitly make it `before`. That's why the darker area is at the top.

The pink region at the bottom of the page is the region-after. The darker area is the footer text. In XSL, the default display alignment for a region is `before`, but the DocBook stylesheets explicitly make it `after`. That's why the darker area is at the bottom.

The dimensions in the figure are:

A. The page-master margin-top.

B. The region-before extent.

C. The region-body margin-top.

D. The region-after extent.

E. The page-master margin-bottom.

F. The region-body margin-bottom.

G. The sum of the page-master margin-left and the region-body margin-left. In DocBook, the region-body margin-left is zero by default, so this is simply the page-master region-left.

H. The sum of the page-master margin-right and the region-body margin-right. In DocBook, the region-body margin-right is zero by default, so this is simply the page-master region-left.

Name

page.height — The height of the physical page

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="page.height">
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$page.orientation = 'portrait'">
      <xsl:value-of select="$page.height.portrait"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <xsl:value-of select="$page.width.portrait"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:param>
```

Description

The page height is generally calculated from the `paper.type` and `page.orientation`.

Name

page.height.portrait — Specify the physical size of the long edge of the page

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="page.height.portrait">
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A4landscape'">210mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'USletter'">11in</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'USlandscape'">8.5in</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = '4A0'">2378mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = '2A0'">1682mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A0'">1189mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A1'">841mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A2'">594mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A3'">420mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A4'">297mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A5'">210mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A6'">148mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A7'">105mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A8'">74mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A9'">52mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A10'">37mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B0'">1414mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B1'">1000mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B2'">707mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B3'">500mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B4'">353mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B5'">250mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B6'">176mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B7'">125mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B8'">88mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B9'">62mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B10'">44mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C0'">1297mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C1'">917mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C2'">648mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C3'">458mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C4'">324mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C5'">229mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C6'">162mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C7'">114mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C8'">81mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C9'">57mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C10'">40mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>11in</xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:param>
```

Description

The portrait page height is the length of the long edge of the physical page.

Name

page.margin.bottom — The bottom margin of the page

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="page.margin.bottom" select="'0.5in'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The bottom page margin is the distance from the bottom of the region-after to the physical bottom of the page.

Name

page.margin.inner — The inner page margin

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="page.margin.inner">
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$double.sided != 0">1.25in</xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>1in</xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:param>
```

Description

The inner page margin is the distance from binding edge of the page to the first column of text. In the left-to-right, top-to-bottom writing direction, this is the left margin of recto pages.

The inner and outer margins are usually the same unless the output is double-sided.

Name

page.margin.outer — The outer page margin

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="page.margin.outer">
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$double.sided != 0">0.75in</xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>1in</xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:param>
```

Description

The outer page margin is the distance from non-binding edge of the page to the last column of text. In the left-to-right, top-to-bottom writing direction, this is the right margin of recto pages.

The inner and outer margins are usually the same unless the output is double-sided.

Name

page.margin.top — The top margin of the page

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="page.margin.top" select="'0.5in'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The top page margin is the distance from the physical top of the page to the top of the region-before.

Name

page.orientation — Select the page orientation

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="page.orientation" select="'portrait'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

In portrait orientation, the short edge is horizontal; in landscape orientation, it is vertical.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

page.width — The width of the physical page

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="page.width">
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$page.orientation = 'portrait'">
      <xsl:value-of select="$page.width.portrait"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <xsl:value-of select="$page.height.portrait"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:param>
```

Description

The page width is generally calculated from the `paper.type` and `page.orientation`.

Name

page.width.portrait — Specify the physical size of the short edge of the page

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="page.width.portrait">
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'USletter'">8.5in</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = '4A0'">1682mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = '2A0'">1189mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A0'">841mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A1'">594mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A2'">420mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A3'">297mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A4'">210mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A5'">148mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A6'">105mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A7'">74mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A8'">52mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A9'">37mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'A10'">26mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B0'">1000mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B1'">707mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B2'">500mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B3'">353mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B4'">250mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B5'">176mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B6'">125mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B7'">88mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B8'">62mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B9'">44mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'B10'">31mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C0'">917mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C1'">648mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C2'">458mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C3'">324mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C4'">229mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C5'">162mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C6'">114mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C7'">81mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C8'">57mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C9'">40mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$paper.type = 'C10'">28mm</xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>8.5in</xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

The portrait page width is the length of the short edge of the physical page.

Name

paper.type — Select the paper type

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="paper.type" select="'USletter'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The paper type is a convenient way to specify the paper size. The list of known paper sizes includes USletter and most of the A, B, and C sizes. See `page.width.portrait`, for example.

Name

double.sided — Is the document to be printed double sided?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="double.sided" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Double-sided documents are printed with a slightly wider margin on the binding edge of the page.

FIXME: The current set of parameters does not take writing direction into account.

Name

body.margin.bottom — The bottom margin of the body text

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="body.margin.bottom" select="'0.5in'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The body bottom margin is the distance from the last line of text in the page body to the bottom of the region-after.

Name

body.margin.top — To specify the size of the top margin of a page

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="body.margin.top" select="'0.5in'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The body top margin is the distance from the top of the region-before to the first line of text in the page body.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

body.start.indent — The start-indent for the body text

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="body.start.indent">
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$fop.extensions != 0">0pt</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$passivetex.extensions != 0">0pt</xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>4pc</xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter provides one means of indenting the body text relative to the left page margin. It is used in place of the *`title.margin.left`* for all XSL-FO processors except FOP. It enables support for side floats to appear in the indented margin area.

This start-indent property is added to the fo:flow for certain page sequences. Which page-sequences it is applied to is determined by the template named `set.flow.properties`. By default, that template adds it to the flow for page-sequences using the “body” master-reference, as well as appendixes and prefaces.

If this parameter is used, section titles should have a start-indent value of 0pt if they are to be outdented relative to the body text.

If you are using FOP, then set this parameter to a zero width value and set the *`title.margin.left`* parameter to the negative value of the desired indent.

See also *`body.end.indent`* and *`title.margin.left`*.

Name

body.end.indent — The end-indent for the body text

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="body.end.indent" select="'0pt'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This end-indent property is added to the fo:flow for certain page sequences. Which page-sequences it is applied to is determined by the template named `set.flow.properties`. By default, that template adds it to the flow for page-sequences using the “body” master-reference, as well as appendixes and prefaces.

See also *`body.start.indent`*.

Name

alignment — Specify the default text alignment

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="alignment">justify</xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

The default text alignment is used for most body text.

Name

hyphenate — Specify hyphenation behavior

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="hyphenate">true</xsl:param>
```

Description

If true, words may be hyphenated. Otherwise, they may not.

Name

line-height — Specify the line-height property

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="line-height" select="'normal'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Sets the line-height property.

Name

column.count.back — Number of columns on back matter pages

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="column.count.back" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Number of columns on back matter (appendix, glossary, etc.) pages.

Name

column.count.body — Number of columns on body pages

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="column.count.body" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Number of columns on body pages.

Name

column.count.front — Number of columns on front matter pages

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="column.count.front" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Number of columns on front matter (dedication, preface, etc.) pages.

Name

column.count.index — Number of columns on index pages

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="column.count.index" select="2"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Number of columns on index pages.

Name

column.count.lot — Number of columns on a 'List-of-Titles' page

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="column.count.lot" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Number of columns on a page sequence containing the Table of Contents, List of Figures, etc.

Name

column.count.titlepage — Number of columns on a title page

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="column.count.titlepage" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Number of columns on a title page

Name

column.gap.back — Gap between columns in back matter

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="column.gap.back" select="'12pt'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the gap between columns in back matter (if `column.count.back` is greater than one).

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

column.gap.body — Gap between columns in the body

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="column.gap.body" select="'12pt'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the gap between columns in body matter (if `column.count.body` is greater than one).

Name

column.gap.front — Gap between columns in the front matter

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="column.gap.front" select="'12pt'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the gap between columns in front matter (if `column.count.front` is greater than one).

Name

column.gap.index — Gap between columns in the index

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="column.gap.index" select="'12pt'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the gap between columns in indexes (if `column.count.index` is greater than one).

Name

column.gap.lot — Gap between columns on a 'List-of-Titles' page

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="column.gap.lot" select="'12pt'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the gap between columns on 'List-of-Titles' pages (if `column.count.lot` is greater than one).

Name

column.gap.titlepage — Gap between columns on title pages

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="column.gap.titlepage" select="'12pt'"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

Specifies the gap between columns on title pages (if `column.count.titlepage` is greater than one).

Name

region.after.extent — Specifies the height of the footer.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="region.after.extent" select="'0.4in'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The region after extent is the height of the area where footers are printed.

Name

region.before.extent — Specifies the height of the header

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="region.before.extent" select="'0.4in'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The region before extent is the height of the area where headers are printed.

Name

default.units — Default units for an unqualified dimension

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="default.units" select="'pt'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If an unqualified dimension is encountered (for example, in a graphic width), the `default-units` will be used for the units. Unqualified dimensions are not allowed in XSL Formatting Objects.

Name

normal.para.spacing — What space do you want between normal paragraphs

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="normal.para.spacing">
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.optimum">1em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.minimum">0.8em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.maximum">1.2em</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Specify the spacing required between normal paragraphs

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

body.font.master — Specifies the default point size for body text

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="body.font.master">10</xsl:param>
```

Description

The body font size is specified in two parameters (`body.font.master` and `body.font.size`) so that math can be performed on the font size by XSLT.

Name

body.font.size — Specifies the default font size for body text

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="body.font.size">
 <xsl:value-of select="$body.font.master"></xsl:value-of><xsl:text>pt</xsl:text>
</xsl:param>
```

Description

The body font size is specified in two parameters (`body.font.master` and `body.font.size`) so that math can be performed on the font size by XSLT.

Name

footnote.font.size — The font size for footnotes

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="footnote.font.size">
 <xsl:value-of select="$body.font.master * 0.8"></xsl:value-of><xsl:text>pt</xsl:text>
</xsl:param>
```

Description

The footnote font size is used for...footnotes!

Name

title.margin.left — Adjust the left margin for titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="title.margin.left">
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$fop.extensions != 0">-4pc</xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$passivetex.extensions != 0">0pt</xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>0pt</xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter provides one means of adjusting the left margin for titles. The left margin of the body region is calculated to include this space, and titles are outdented to the left by this amount, effectively

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

leaving titles at the left margin and the body text indented. Currently this method is only used for FOP because it cannot properly use the *body.start.indent* parameter. the relative

The default value for FOP is -4pc, which means the body text is indented 4 picas relative to the titles. The default value for other processors is 0pt, and the body indent is provided by the *body.start.indent* parameter.

If you set the value to zero, be sure to still include a unit indicator such as `0pt`, or the FO processor will report errors.

This parameter must be set to 0pt if the *passivetex.extensions* parameter is nonzero because PassiveTeX cannot handle the math expression with negative values used to calculate the indents.

Name

draft.mode — Select draft mode

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="draft.mode" select="'maybe'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Selects draft mode. If *draft.mode* is “`yes`”, the entire document will be treated as a draft. If it is “`no`”, the entire document will be treated as a final copy. If it is “`maybe`”, individual sections will be treated as draft or final independently, depending on how their `status` attribute is set.

Name

draft.watermark.image — The URI of the image to be used for draft watermarks

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="draft.watermark.image" \
select="'http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/images/draft.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The image to be used for draft watermarks.

Name

headers.on.blank.pages — Put headers on blank pages?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="headers.on.blank.pages" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, headers will be placed on blank pages.

Name

footers.on.blank.pages — Put footers on blank pages?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="footers.on.blank.pages" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, footers will be placed on blank pages.

Name

header.rule — Rule under headers?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="header.rule" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, a rule will be drawn below the page headers.

Name

footer.rule — Rule over footers?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="footer.rule" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, a rule will be drawn above the page footers.

Name

header.column.widths — Specify relative widths of header areas

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="header.column.widths" select="'1 1 1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Page headers in print output use a three column table to position text at the left, center, and right side of the header on the page. This parameter lets you specify the relative sizes of the three columns. The default value is "1 1 1".

The parameter value must be three numbers, separated by white space. The first number represents the relative width of the left header for single-sided output, or the inside header for double-sided output. The second number is the relative width of the center header. The third number is the relative width of the right header for single-sided output, or the outside header for double-sided output.

The numbers are used to specify the column widths for the table that makes up the header area. In the FO output, this looks like:

```
<fo:table-column column-number="1"
    column-width="proportional-column-width(1)"/>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

The `proportional-column-width()` function computes a column width by dividing its argument by the total of the arguments for all the columns, and then multiplying the result by the width of the whole table (assuming all the column specs use the function). Its argument can be any positive integer or floating point number. Zero is an acceptable value, although some FO processors may warn about it, in which case using a very small number might be more satisfactory.

For example, the value "1 2 1" means the center header should have twice the width of the other areas. A value of "0 0 1" means the entire header area is reserved for the right (or outside) header text. Note that to keep the center area centered on the page, the left and right values must be the same. A specification like "1 2 3" means the center area is no longer centered on the page since the right area is three times the width of the left area.

Name

footer.column.widths — Specify relative widths of footer areas

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="footer.column.widths" select="'1 1 1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Page footers in print output use a three column table to position text at the left, center, and right side of the footer on the page. This parameter lets you specify the relative sizes of the three columns. The default value is "1 1 1".

The parameter value must be three numbers, separated by white space. The first number represents the relative width of the left footer for single-sided output, or the inside footer for double-sided output. The second number is the relative width of the center footer. The third number is the relative width of the right footer for single-sided output, or the outside footer for double-sided output.

The numbers are used to specify the column widths for the table that makes up the footer area. In the FO output, this looks like:

```
<fo:table-column column-number="1"
    column-width="proportional-column-width(1)"/>
```

The `proportional-column-width()` function computes a column width by dividing its argument by the total of the arguments for all the columns, and then multiplying the result by the width of the whole table (assuming all the column specs use the function). Its argument can be any positive integer or floating point number. Zero is an acceptable value, although some FO processors may warn about it, in which case using a very small number might be more satisfactory.

For example, the value "1 2 1" means the center footer should have twice the width of the other areas. A value of "0 0 1" means the entire footer area is reserved for the right (or outside) footer text. Note that to keep the center area centered on the page, the left and right values must be the same. A specification like "1 2 3" means the center area is no longer centered on the page since the right area is three times the width of the left area.

Name

header.table.height — Specify the minimum height of the table containing the running page headers

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="header.table.height" select="'14pt'"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

Page headers in print output use a three column table to position text at the left, center, and right side of the header on the page. This parameter lets you specify the minimum height of the single row in the table. Since this specifies only the minimum height, the table should automatically grow to fit taller content. The default value is "14pt".

Name

footer.table.height — Specify the minimum height of the table containing the running page footers

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="footer.table.height" select="'14pt'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Page footers in print output use a three column table to position text at the left, center, and right side of the footer on the page. This parameter lets you specify the minimum height of the single row in the table. Since this specifies only the minimum height, the table should automatically grow to fit taller content. The default value is "14pt".

Name

header.content.properties

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="header.content.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-family">
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.fontset"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="margin-left">
    <xsl:value-of select="$title.margin.left"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Properties of page header content.

Name

footer.content.properties

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="footer.content.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-family">
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.fontset"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="margin-left">
    <xsl:value-of select="$title.margin.left"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Properties of page footer content.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

marker.section.level — Control depth of sections shown in running headers or footers

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="marker.section.level" select="2"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The *`marker.section.level`* parameter controls the depth of section levels that may be displayed in running headers and footers. For example, if the value is 2 (the default), then titles from `sect1` and `sect2` or equivalent `section` elements are candidates for use in running headers and footers.

Each candidate title is marked in the FO output with a `<fo:marker marker-class-name="section.head.marker">` element.

In order for such titles to appear in headers or footers, the `header.content` or `footer.content` template must be customized to retrieve the marker using an output element such as:

```
<fo:retrieve-marker retrieve-class-name="section.head.marker"
                       retrieve-position="first-including-carryover"
                       retrieve-boundary="page-sequence"/>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Font Families

Name

body.font.family — The default font family for body text

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="body.font.family" select="'serif'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The body font family is the default font used for text in the page body.

Name

dingbat.font.family — The font family for copyright, quotes, and other symbols

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="dingbat.font.family" select="'serif'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The dingbat font family is used for dingbats. If it is defined as the empty string, no font change is effected around dingbats.

Name

monospace.font.family — The default font family for monospace environments

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="monospace.font.family" select="'monospace'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The monospace font family is used for verbatim environments (program listings, screens, etc.).

Name

sans.font.family — The default sans-serif font family

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="sans.font.family" select="'sans-serif'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The default sans-serif font family. At the present, this isn't actually used by the stylesheets.

Name

title.font.family — The default font family for titles

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="title.font.family" select="'sans-serif'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The title font family is used for titles (chapter, section, figure, etc.)

Name

symbol.font.family — The font families to be searched for symbols outside of the body font

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="symbol.font.family" select="'Symbol,ZapfDingbats'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

A typical body or title font does not contain all the character glyphs that DocBook supports. This parameter specifies additional fonts that should be searched for special characters not in the normal font. These symbol font names are automatically appended to the body or title font family name when fonts are specified in a `font-family` property in the FO output.

The symbol font names should be entered as a comma-separated list. The default value is `Symbol,ZapfDingbats`.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Property Sets

Name

formal.object.properties — Properties associated with a formal object such as a figure, or other component that has a title

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="formal.object.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.minimum">0.5em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.optimum">1em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.maximum">2em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.minimum">0.5em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.optimum">1em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.maximum">2em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="keep-together.within-column">always</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The styling for formal objects in docbook. Specify the spacing before and after the object.

Name

formal.title.properties — Style the title element of formal object such as a figure.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="formal.title.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="normal.para.spacing">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-weight">bold</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.font.master * 1.2"></xsl:value-of>
    <xsl:text>pt</xsl:text>
  </xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="hyphenate">false</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.minimum">0.4em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.optimum">0.6em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.maximum">0.8em</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Specify how the title should be styled. Specify the font size and weight of the title of the formal object.

Name

informal.object.properties — Properties associated with a formal object such as a figure, or other component that has a title

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="informal.object.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.minimum">0.5em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.optimum">1em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.maximum">2em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.minimum">0.5em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.optimum">1em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.maximum">2em</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

The styling for informal objects in docbook. Specify the spacing before and after the object.

Name

monospace.properties — Properties of monospaced content

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="monospace.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-family">
    <xsl:value-of select="$monospace.font.family"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Specifies the font name for monospaced output. This property set used to set the font-size as well, but that doesn't work very well when different fonts are used (as they are in titles and paragraphs, for example).

If you want to set the font-size in a customization layer, it's probably going to be more appropriate to set font-size-adjust, if your formatter supports it.

Name

verbatim.properties — Properties associated with verbatim text

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="verbatim.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.minimum">0.8em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.optimum">1em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.maximum">1.2em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.minimum">0.8em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.optimum">1em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-after.maximum">1.2em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="hyphenate">false</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="wrap-option">no-wrap</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="white-space-collapse">false</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="white-space-treatment">preserve</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="linefeed-treatment">preserve</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="text-align">start</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

This attribute set is used on all verbatim environments.

Name

monospace.verbatim.properties — What font and size do you want for monospaced content?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="monospace.verbatim.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="verbatim.properties monospace.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="text-align">start</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="wrap-option">no-wrap</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

Specify the font name and size you want for monospaced output

Name

sidebar.properties — Attribute set for sidebar properties

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="sidebar.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="formal.object.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="border-style">solid</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="border-width">1pt</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="border-color">black</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="background-color">#DDDDDD</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="padding-left">12pt</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="padding-right">12pt</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="padding-top">6pt</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="padding-bottom">6pt</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="margin-left">0pt</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="margin-right">0pt</xsl:attribute>
<!--
  <xsl:attribute name="margin-top">6pt</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="margin-bottom">6pt</xsl:attribute>
-->
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The styling for sidebars.

Name

sidebar.title.properties — Attribute set for sidebar titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="sidebar.title.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-weight">bold</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="hyphenate">false</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="text-align">start</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="keep-with-next.within-column">always</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The styling for sidebars titles.

Name

sidebar.float.type — Select type of float for sidebar elements

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="sidebar.float.type" select="'none'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Selects the type of float for sidebar elements.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

- If *sidebar.float.type* is “none”, then no float is used.
- If *sidebar.float.type* is “before”, then the float appears at the top of the page. On some processors, that may be the next page rather than the current page.
- If *sidebar.float.type* is “left” or “start”, then a left side float is used.
- If *sidebar.float.type* is “right” or “end”, then a right side float is used.
- If your XSL-FO processor supports floats positioned on the “inside” or “outside” of double-sided pages, then you have those two options for side floats as well.

Name

sidebar.float.width — Set the default width for sidebars

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="sidebar.float.width" select="'1in'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Sets the default width for sidebars when used as a side float. The width determines the degree to which the sidebar block intrudes into the text area.

If *sidebar.float.type* is “before” or “none”, then this parameter is ignored.

Name

margin.note.properties — Attribute set for margin.note properties

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="margin.note.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">90%</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="text-align">start</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The styling for margin notes. By default, margin notes are not implemented for any element. A stylesheet customization is needed to make use of this attribute-set.

You can use a template named “floater” to create the customization. That template can create side floats by specifying the content and characteristics as template parameters.

For example:

```
<xsl:template match="para[@role='marginnote']">
  <xsl:call-template name="floater">
    <xsl:with-param name="position">
      <xsl:value-of select="$margin.note.float.type"/>
    </xsl:with-param>
    <xsl:with-param name="width">
      <xsl:value-of select="$margin.note.width"/>
    </xsl:with-param>
    <xsl:with-param name="content">
      <xsl:apply-imports/>
    </xsl:with-param>
  </xsl:call-template>
</xsl:template>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

margin.note.title.properties — Attribute set for margin note titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="margin.note.title.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-weight">bold</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="hyphenate">false</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="text-align">start</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="keep-with-next.within-column">always</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The styling for margin note titles.

Name

margin.note.float.type — Select type of float for margin note customizations

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="margin.note.float.type" select="'none'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Selects the type of float for margin notes. DocBook does not define a margin note element, so this feature must be implemented as a customization of the stylesheet. See *margin.note.properties* for an example.

- If *margin.note.float.type* is “none”, then no float is used.
- If *margin.note.float.type* is “before”, then the float appears at the top of the page. On some processors, that may be the next page rather than the current page.
- If *margin.note.float.type* is “left” or “start”, then a left side float is used.
- If *margin.note.float.type* is “right” or “end”, then a right side float is used.
- If your XSL-FO processor supports floats positioned on the “inside” or “outside” of double-sided pages, then you have those two options for side floats as well.

Name

margin.note.width — Set the default width for margin notes

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="margin.note.width" select="'1in'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Sets the default width for margin notes when used as a side float. The width determines the degree to which the margin note block intrudes into the text area.

If *margin.note.float.type* is “before” or “none”, then this parameter is ignored.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

component.title.properties — Properties for component titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="component.title.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="keep-with-next.within-column">always</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.optimum"><xsl:value-of \
select="concat($body.font.master, 'pt')"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.minimum"><xsl:value-of \
select="concat($body.font.master, 'pt * 0.8')"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.maximum"><xsl:value-of \
select="concat($body.font.master, 'pt * 1.2')"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="hyphenate">false</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="text-align">
    <xsl:choose>
      <xsl:when test="((parent::article | parent::articleinfo | \
parent::info/parent::article) and not(ancestor::book) and not(self::bibliography))  \
       or (parent::slides | parent::slidesinfo)">center</xsl:when>
      <xsl:otherwise>left</xsl:otherwise>
    </xsl:choose>
  </xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="start-indent"><xsl:value-of \
select="$title.margin.left"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties common to all component titles.

Name

section.title.properties — Properties for section titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.title.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-family">
    <xsl:value-of select="$title.font.family"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-weight">bold</xsl:attribute>
  <!-- font size is calculated dynamically by section.heading template -->
  <xsl:attribute name="keep-with-next.within-column">always</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.minimum">0.8em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.optimum">1.0em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.maximum">1.2em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="text-align">left</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="start-indent"><xsl:value-of \
select="$title.margin.left"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties common to all section titles.

Name

section.title.level1.properties — Properties for level-1 section titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.title.level1.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.font.master * 2.0736"></xsl:value-of>
    <xsl:text>pt</xsl:text>
  </xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties of level-1 section titles.

Name

section.title.level2.properties — Properties for level-1 section titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.title.level2.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.font.master * 1.728"></xsl:value-of>
    <xsl:text>pt</xsl:text>
  </xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties of level-2 section titles.

Name

section.title.level3.properties — Properties for level-1 section titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.title.level3.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.font.master * 1.44"></xsl:value-of>
    <xsl:text>pt</xsl:text>
  </xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties of level-3 section titles.

Name

section.title.level4.properties — Properties for level-1 section titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.title.level4.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.font.master * 1.2"></xsl:value-of>
    <xsl:text>pt</xsl:text>
  </xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties of level-4 section titles.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

section.title.level5.properties — Properties for level-1 section titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.title.level5.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.font.master"></xsl:value-of>
    <xsl:text>pt</xsl:text>
  </xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties of level-5 section titles.

Name

section.title.level6.properties — Properties for level-1 section titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.title.level6.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.font.master"></xsl:value-of>
    <xsl:text>pt</xsl:text>
  </xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties of level-6 section titles. This property set is actually used for all titles below level 5.

Name

section.properties — Properties for all section levels

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.properties">
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties that apply to the containing block of all section levels, and therefore apply to the whole section. This attribute set is inherited by the more specific attribute sets such as `section.level1.properties`. The default is empty.

Name

section.level1.properties — Properties for level-1 sections

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.level1.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="section.properties">
</xsl:attribute-set>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

The properties that apply to the containing block of a level-1 section, and therefore apply to the whole section. This includes `sect1` elements and `section` elements at level 1.

For example, you could start each level-1 section on a new page by using:

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.level1.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="break-before">page</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

This attribute set inherits attributes from the general `section.properties` attribute set.

Name

section.level2.properties — Properties for level-2 sections

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.level2.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="section.properties">
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties that apply to the containing block of a level-2 section, and therefore apply to the whole section. This includes `sect2` elements and `section` elements at level 2.

For example, you could start each level-2 section on a new page by using:

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.level2.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="break-before">page</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

This attribute set inherits attributes from the general `section.properties` attribute set.

Name

section.level3.properties — Properties for level-3 sections

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.level3.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="section.properties">
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties that apply to the containing block of a level-3 section, and therefore apply to the whole section. This includes `sect3` elements and `section` elements at level 3.

For example, you could start each level-3 section on a new page by using:

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.level3.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="break-before">page</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

This attribute set inherits attributes from the general `section.properties` attribute set.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

section.level4.properties — Properties for level-4 sections

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.level4.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="section.properties">
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties that apply to the containing block of a level-4 section, and therefore apply to the whole section. This includes `sect4` elements and `section` elements at level 4.

For example, you could start each level-4 section on a new page by using:

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.level4.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="break-before">page</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

This attribute set inherits attributes from the general `section.properties` attribute set.

Name

section.level5.properties — Properties for level-5 sections

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.level5.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="section.properties">
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties that apply to the containing block of a level-5 section, and therefore apply to the whole section. This includes `sect5` elements and `section` elements at level 5.

For example, you could start each level-5 section on a new page by using:

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.level5.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="break-before">page</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

This attribute set inherits attributes from the general `section.properties` attribute set.

Name

section.level6.properties — Properties for level-6 sections

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.level6.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="section.properties">
</xsl:attribute-set>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

The properties that apply to the containing block of a level 6 or lower section, and therefore apply to the whole section. This includes `section` elements at level 6 and lower.

For example, you could start each level-6 section on a new page by using:

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="section.level6.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="break-before">page</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

This attribute set inherits attributes from the general `section.properties` attribute set.

Name

figure.properties — Properties associated with a figure

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="figure.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="formal.object.properties"></xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The styling for figures.

Name

example.properties — Properties associated with a example

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="example.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="formal.object.properties"></xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The styling for examples.

Name

equation.properties — Properties associated with a equation

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="equation.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="formal.object.properties"></xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The styling for equations.

Name

table.properties — Properties associated with the block surrounding a table

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="table.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="formal.object.properties"></xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Block styling properties for tables. This parameter should really have been called `table.block.properties` or something like that, but we're leaving it to avoid backwards-compatibility problems.

See also *`table.table.properties`*.

Name

informalfigure.properties — Properties associated with an informalfigure

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="informalfigure.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="informal.object.properties"></xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The styling for informalfigures.

Name

informalexample.properties — Properties associated with an informalexample

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="informalexample.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="informal.object.properties"></xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The styling for informalexamples.

Name

informalequation.properties — Properties associated with a informalequation

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="informalequation.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="informal.object.properties"></xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The styling for informalequations.

Name

informaltable.properties — Properties associated with the block surrounding an informaltable

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="informaltable.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="informal.object.properties"></xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Block styling properties for informaltables. This parameter should really have been called `informaltable.block.properties` or something like that, but we're leaving it to avoid backwards-compatibility problems.

See also *`table.table.properties`*.

Name

procedure.properties — Properties associated with a procedure

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="procedure.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="formal.object.properties"></xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The styling for procedures.

Name

root.properties — The properties of the fo:root element

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="root.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-family">
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.fontset"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.font.size"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="text-align">
    <xsl:value-of select="$alignment"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="line-height">
    <xsl:value-of select="$line-height"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-selection-strategy">character-by-character</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="line-height-shift-adjustment">disregard-shifts</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

This property set is used on the `fo:root` element of an FO file. It defines a set of default, global parameters.

Name

qanda.title.properties — Properties for qanda set titles

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="qanda.title.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-family">
    <xsl:value-of select="$title.font.family"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-weight">bold</xsl:attribute>
  <!-- font size is calculated dynamically by qanda.heading template -->
  <xsl:attribute name="keep-with-next.within-column">always</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.minimum">0.8em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.optimum">1.0em</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.maximum">1.2em</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties common to all qanda set titles.

Name

qanda.title.level1.properties — Properties for level-1 qanda set titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="qanda.title.level1.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.font.master * 2.0736"></xsl:value-of>
    <xsl:text>pt</xsl:text>
  </xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties of level-1 qanda set titles.

Name

qanda.title.level2.properties — Properties for level-2 qanda set titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="qanda.title.level2.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.font.master * 1.728"></xsl:value-of>
    <xsl:text>pt</xsl:text>
  </xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties of level-2 qanda set titles.

Name

qanda.title.level3.properties — Properties for level-3 qanda set titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="qanda.title.level3.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.font.master * 1.44"></xsl:value-of>
    <xsl:text>pt</xsl:text>
  </xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties of level-3 qanda set titles.

Name

qanda.title.level4.properties — Properties for level-4 qanda set titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="qanda.title.level4.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.font.master * 1.2"></xsl:value-of>
    <xsl:text>pt</xsl:text>
  </xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties of level-4 qanda set titles.

Name

qanda.title.level5.properties — Properties for level-5 qanda set titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="qanda.title.level5.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.font.master"></xsl:value-of>
    <xsl:text>pt</xsl:text>
  </xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties of level-5 qanda set titles.

Name

qanda.title.level6.properties — Properties for level-6 qanda set titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="qanda.title.level6.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.font.master"></xsl:value-of>
    <xsl:text>pt</xsl:text>
  </xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties of level-6 qanda set titles. This property set is actually used for all titles below level 5.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

article.appendix.title.properties — Properties for appendix titles that appear in an article

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="article.appendix.title.properties" \
use-attribute-sets="section.title.properties                          \
section.title.level1.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="margin-left">
    <xsl:value-of select="$title.margin.left"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties for the title of an appendix that appears inside an article. The default is to use the properties of sect1 titles.

Name

abstract.properties — Properties associated with the block surrounding an abstract

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="abstract.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="start-indent">0.0in</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="end-indent">0.0in</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Block styling properties for abstract.

See also *`abstract.title.properties`*.

Name

abstract.title.properties — Properties for abstract titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="abstract.title.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-family"><xsl:value-of \
select="$title.fontset"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-weight">bold</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="keep-with-next.within-column">always</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="keep-with-next.within-column">always</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.optimum"><xsl:value-of \
select="concat($body.font.master, 'pt')"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.minimum"><xsl:value-of \
select="concat($body.font.master, 'pt * 0.8')"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="space-before.maximum"><xsl:value-of \
select="concat($body.font.master, 'pt * 1.2')"></xsl:value-of></xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="hyphenate">false</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="text-align">center</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

The properties for abstract titles.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

See also *abstract.properties*.

Name

index.page.number.properties — Properties associated with index page numbers

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="index.page.number.properties">
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

Properties associated with page numbers in indexes. Changing color to indicate the page number is a link is one possibility.

Name

revhistory.table.properties — The properties of table used for formatting revhistory

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="revhistory.table.properties">
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

This property set defines appearance of revhistory table.

Name

revhistory.table.cell.properties — The properties of table cells used for formatting revhistory

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="revhistory.table.cell.properties">
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

This property set defines appearance of individual cells in revhistory table.

Name

revhistory.title.properties — The properties of revhistory title

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="revhistory.title.properties">
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

This property set defines appearance of revhistory title.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Profiling

Following parameters can be used for attribute value based profiling of your document. For more info about profiling look at http://docbook.sourceforge.net/projects/xsl/doc/tools/profiling.html.

Name

profile.arch — Target profile for `arch` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.arch" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, ...) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, ...).

Name

profile.condition — Target profile for `condition` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.condition" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, ...) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, ...).

Name

profile.conformance — Target profile for `conformance` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.conformance" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, ...) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, ...).

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

profile.lang — Target profile for `lang` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.lang" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.os — Target profile for `os` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.os" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.revision — Target profile for `revision` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.revision" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.revisionflag — Target profile for `revisionflag` attribute

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.revisionflag" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.role — Target profile for `role` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.role" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Warning

Note that `role` is often used for other purposes than profiling. For example it is commonly used to get emphasize in bold font:

```
<emphasis role="bold">very important</emphasis>
```

If you are using `role` for these purposes do not forget to add values like `bold` to value of this parameter. If you forgot you will get document with small pieces missing which are very hard to track.

For this reason it is not recommended to use `role` attribute for profiling. You should rather use profiling specific attributes like `userlevel`, `os`, `arch`, `condition`, etc.

Name

profile.security — Target profile for `security` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.security" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.status — Target profile for `status` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.status" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.userlevel — Target profile for `userlevel` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.userlevel" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.vendor — Target profile for `vendor` attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.vendor" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.attribute — Name of user-specified profiling attribute

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.attribute" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter is used in conjuction with *`profile.value`*.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.value — Target profile for user-specified attribute

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.value" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

When you are using this parameter you must also specify name of profiling attribute with parameter *`profile.attribute`*.

Value of this parameter specifies profiles which should be included in the output. You can specify multiple profiles by separating them by semicolon. You can change separator character by *`profile.separator`* parameter.

This parameter has effect only when you are using profiling stylesheets (`profile-docbook.xsl`, `profile-chunk.xsl`, …) instead of normal ones (`docbook.xsl`, `chunk.xsl`, …).

Name

profile.separator — Separator character for compound profile values

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="profile.separator" select="';'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Separator character for compound profile values.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Localization

Name

l10n.gentext.language — Sets the gentext language

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="l10n.gentext.language" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If this parameter is set to any value other than the empty string, its value will be used as the value for the language when generating text. Setting `l10n.gentext.language` overrides any settings within the document being formatted.

It's much more likely that you might want to set the `l10n.gentext.default.language` parameter.

Name

l10n.gentext.default.language — Sets the default language for generated text

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="l10n.gentext.default.language" select="'en'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The value of the `l10n.gentext.default.language` parameter is used as the language for generated text if no setting is provided in the source document.

Name

l10n.gentext.use.xref.language — Use the language of target when generating cross-reference text?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="l10n.gentext.use.xref.language" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, the language of the target will be used when generating cross reference text. Usually, the “current” language is used when generating text (that is, the language of the element that contains the cross-reference element). But setting this parameter allows the language of the element *pointed to* to control the generated text.

Consider the following example:

```
<para lang="en">See also <xref linkend="chap3"/>.</para>
```

Suppose that Chapter 3 happens to be written in German. If `l10n.gentext.use.xref.language` is non-zero, the resulting text will be something like this:

> See also Kapital 3.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Where the more traditional rendering would be:

See also Chapter 3.

Name

l10n.lang.value.rfc.compliant — Make value of lang attribute RFC compliant?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="l10n.lang.value.rfc.compliant" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, ensure that the values for all `lang` attributes in HTML output are RFC compliant[1]. by taking any underscore characters in any `lang` values found in source documents, and replacing them with hyphen characters in output HTML files. For example, `zh_CN` in a source document becomes `zh-CN` in the HTML output form that source.

Note

This parameter does not cause any case change in `lang` values, because RFC 1766 explicitly states that all "language tags" (as it calls them) "are to be treated as case insensitive".

[1]Section 8.1.1, Language Codes [http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html40/struct/dirlang.html#h-8.1.1], in the HTML 4.0 Recommendation states that:

> [RFC1766] defines and explains the language codes that must be used in HTML documents.
>
> Briefly, language codes consist of a primary code and a possibly empty series of subcodes:
>
> ```
> language-code = primary-code ( "-" subcode )*
> ```
>
> And in RFC 1766, Tags for the Identification of Languages [http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc1766.txt], the EBNF for "language tag" is given as:
>
> ```
> Language-Tag = Primary-tag *( "-" Subtag )
> Primary-tag = 1*8ALPHA
> Subtag = 1*8ALPHA
> ```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

EBNF

Name

ebnf.assignment — The EBNF production assignment operator

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="ebnf.assignment">
<code>::=</code>
</xsl:param>
```

Description

The *`ebnf.assignment`* parameter determines what text is used to show “assignment” in `productions` in `productionsets`.

While “`::=`” is common, so are several other operators.

Name

ebnf.statement.terminator — Punctuation that ends an EBNF statement.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="ebnf.statement.terminator"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The *`ebnf.statement.terminator`* parameter determines what text is used to terminate each `production` in `productionset`.

Some notations end each statement with a period.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Prepress

Name

crop.marks — Output crop marks?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="crop.marks" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, crop marks will be added to each page. Currently this works only with XEP if you have *`xep.extensions`* set.

Name

crop.mark.width — Width of crop marks.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="crop.mark.width" select="'0.5pt'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Width of crop marks. Crop marks are controlled by *`crop.marks`* parameter.

Name

crop.mark.offset — Length of crop marks.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="crop.mark.offset" select="'24pt'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Length of crop marks. Crop marks are controlled by *`crop.marks`* parameter.

Name

crop.mark.bleed — Length of invisible part of crop marks.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="crop.mark.bleed" select="'6pt'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Length of invisible part of crop marks. Crop marks are controlled by *`crop.marks`* parameter.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Part III. Manpages Parameter Reference

This is reference documentation for all user-configurable parameters in the DocBook XSL "manpages" stylesheet (for generating groff/nroff output). Note that the manpages stylesheet is a customization layer of the DocBook XSL HTML stylesheet. Therefore, you can also use a number of HTML stylesheet parameters[1] to control manpages output (in addition to the manpages-specific parameters listed in this section).

[1] http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/xsl/current/doc/html/index.html

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Hyphenation, justification, and breaking

Name

man.hyphenate — Enable hyphenation?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.hyphenate">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, hyphenation is enabled.

Note

The default value for this parameter is zero because groff is not particularly smart about how it does hyphenation; it can end up hyphenating a lot of things that you don't want hyphenated. To mitigate that, the default behavior of the stylesheets is to suppress hyphenation of computer inlines, filenames, and URLs. (You can override the default behavior by setting non-zero values for the *man.hyphenate.urls*, *man.hyphenate.filenames*, and *man.hyphenate.computer.inlines* parameters.) But the best way is still to just globally disable hyphenation, as the stylesheets do by default.

The only good reason to enabled hyphenation is if you have also enabled justification (which is disabled by default). The reason is that justified text can look very bad unless you also hyphenate it; to quote the “Hypenation” node from the groff info page:

> *Since the odds are not great for finding a set of words, for every output line, which fit nicely on a line without inserting excessive amounts of space between words, 'gtroff' hyphenates words so that it can justify lines without inserting too much space between words.*

So, if you set a non-zero value for the *man.justify* parameter (to enable justification), then you should probably also set a non-zero value for *man.hyphenate* (to enable hyphenation).

Name

man.hyphenate.urls — Hyphenate URLs?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.hyphenate.urls">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If zero (the default), hyphenation is suppressed for output of the `ulink` `url` attribute.

Note

If hyphenation is already turned off globally (that is, if *man.hyphenate* is zero, setting *man.hyphenate.urls* is not necessary.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

If *man.hyphenate.urls* is non-zero, URLs will not be treated specially and are subject to hyphenation just like other words.

Note

If you are thinking about setting a non-zero value for *man.hyphenate.urls* in order to make long URLs break across lines, you'd probably be better off experimenting with setting the *man.break.after.slash* parameter first. That will cause long URLs to be broken after slashes.

Name

man.hyphenate.filenames — Hyphenate filenames?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.hyphenate.filenames">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If zero (the default), hyphenation is suppressed for `filename` output.

Note

If hyphenation is already turned off globally (that is, if *man.hyphenate* is zero, setting *man.hyphenate.filenames* is not necessary.

If *man.hyphenate.filenames* is non-zero, filenames will not be treated specially and are subject to hyphenation just like other words.

Note

If you are thinking about setting a non-zero value for *man.hyphenate.filenames* in order to make long filenames/pathnames break across lines, you'd probably be better off experimenting with setting the *man.break.after.slash* parameter first. That will cause long pathnames to be broken after slashes.

Name

man.hyphenate.computer.inlines — Hyphenate computer inlines?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.hyphenate.computer.inlines">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If zero (the default), hyphenation is suppressed for “computer inlines” such as environment variables, constants, etc. This parameter current affects output of the following elements: `classname`, `constant`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `option`, `replaceable`, `userinput`, `type`, `varname`

Note

If hyphenation is already turned off globally (that is, if *man.hyphenate* is zero, setting the *man.hyphenate.computer.inlines* is not necessary.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

If *man.hyphenate.computer.inlines* is non-zero, computer inlines will not be treated specially and will be hyphenated like other words when needed.

Name

man.justify — Justify text to both right and left margins?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.justify">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, text is justified to both the right and left margins (or, in roff terminology, "adjusted and filled" to both the right and left margins). If zero (the default), text is adjusted to the left margin only -- producing what is traditionally called "ragged-right" text.

Note

The default value for this parameter is zero because justified text looks good only when it is also hyphenated. Without hyphenation, excessive amounts of space often end up getting between words, in order to "pad" lines out to align on the right margin.

The problem is that groff is not particularly smart about how it does hyphenation; it can end up hyphenating a lot of things that you don't want hyphenated. So, disabling both justification and hyphenation ensures that hyphens won't get inserted where you don't want to them, and you don't end up with lines containing excessive amounts of space between words.

However, if do you decide to set a non-zero value for the *man.justify* parameter (to enable justification), then you should probably also set a non-zero value for *man.hyphenate* (to enable hyphenation).

Yes, these default settings run counter to how most existing man pages are formatted. But there are some notable exceptions, such as the `perl` man pages.

Name

man.break.after.slash — Enable line-breaking after slashes?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.break.after.slash">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, line-breaking after slashes is enabled. This is mainly useful for causing long URLs or pathnames/filenames to be broken up or "wrapped" across lines (though it also has the side effect of sometimes causing relatively short URLs and pathnames to be broken up across lines too).

If zero (the default), line-breaking after slashes is disabled. In that case, strings containing slashes (for example, URLs or filenames) are not broken across lines, even if they exceed the maximum column widith.

Warning

If you set a non-zero value for this parameter, check your man-page output carefuly afterwards, in order to make sure that the setting has not introduced an excessive amount of breaking-up of URLs or pathnames. If your content contains mostly short URLs or pathnames, setting a

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

non-zero value for `man.break.after.slash` will probably result in in a significant number of relatively short URLs and pathnames being broken across lines, which is probably not what you want.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Indentation

Name

man.indent.width — Specifies width used for adjusted indents

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.indent.width">4</xsl:param>
```

Description

The *man.indent.width* parameter specifies the width used for adjusted indents. The value of *man.indent.width* is used for indenting of lists, verbatims, headings, and elsewhere, depending on whether the values of certain man.indent.* boolean parameters are non-zero.

The value of *man.indent.width* should include a valid roff measurement unit (for example, n or u). The default value of 4n specifies a 4-en width; when viewed on a console, that amounts to the width of four characters. For details about roff measurment units, see the Measurements node in the groff info page.

Name

man.indent.refsect — Adjust indentation of refsect* and refsection?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.indent.refsect" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *man.indent.refsect* is non-zero, the width of the left margin for refsect1, refsect2 and refsect3 contents and titles (and first-level, second-level, and third-level nested refsectioninstances) is adjusted by the value of the *man.indent.width* parameter. With *man.indent.width* set to its default value of 3n, the main results are that:

- contents of refsect1 are output with a left margin of three characters instead the roff default of seven or eight characters
- contents of refsect2 are displayed in console output with a left margin of six characters instead the of the roff default of seven characters
- the contents of refsect3 and nested refsection instances are adjusted accordingly.

If instead the value of *man.indent.refsect* is zero, no margin adjustment is done for refsect* output.

Tip

If your content is primarly comprised of refsect1 and refsect2 content (or the refsection equivalent) – with few or no refsect3 or lower nested sections , you may be able to “conserve” space in your output by setting *man.indent.refsect* to a non-zero value. Doing so will “squeeze” the left margin in such as way as to provide an additional four characters of “room” per line in refsect1 output. That extra room may be useful if, for example, you have many verbatim sections with long lines in them.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

man.indent.blurbs — Adjust indentation of blurbs?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.indent.blurbs" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *man.indent.blurbs* is non-zero, the width of the left margin for authorblurb, personblurb, and contrib output is set to the value of the *man.indent.width* parameter (3n by default). If instead the value of *man.indent.blurbs* is zero, the built-in roff default width (7.2n) is used.

Name

man.indent.lists — Adjust indentation of lists?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.indent.lists" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *man.indent.lists* is non-zero, the width of the left margin for list items in itemizedlist, orderedlist, variablelist output (and output of some other lists) is set to the value of the *man.indent.width* parameter (4n by default). If instead the value of *man.indent.lists* is zero, the built-in roff default width (7.2n) is used.

Name

man.indent.verbatims — Adjust indentation of verbatims?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.indent.verbatims" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *man.indent.verbatims* is non-zero, the width of the left margin for output of verbatim environments (programlisting, screen, and so on) is set to the value of the *man.indent.width* parameter (3n by default). If instead the value of *man.indent.verbatims* is zero, the built-in roff default width (7.2n) is used.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Fonts

Name

man.font.funcprototype — Specifies font for funcprototype output

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.font.funcprototype">BI</xsl:param>
```

Description

The *man.font.funcprototype* parameter specifies the font for `funcprototype` output. It should be a valid roff font name, such as `BI` or `B`.

Name

man.font.funcsynopsisinfo — Specifies font for funcsynopsisinfo output

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.font.funcsynopsisinfo">B</xsl:param>
```

Description

The *man.font.funcsynopsisinfo* parameter specifies the font for `funcsynopsisinfo` output. It should be a valid roff font name, such as `B` or `I`.

Name

man.font.table.headings — Specifies font for table headings

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.font.table.headings">B</xsl:param>
```

Description

The *man.font.table.headings* parameter specifies the font for `table` headings. It should be a valid roff font, such as `B` or `I`.

Name

man.font.table.title — Specifies font for table headings

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.font.table.title">B</xsl:param>
```

Description

The *man.font.table.title* parameter specifies the font for `table` titles. It should be a valid roff font, such as `B` or `I`.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Link handling

Name

man.links.are.numbered — Number links?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.links.are.numbered">1</xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *man.links.are.numbered* is non-zero (the default), then for each non-empty[1] link:

- a number (in square brackets) is displayed inline before the rendered contents of the link
- the URL for the link is included in a numbered list of links that is generated at the end of each man page; the number for each links corresponds to the inline number for the link with which it is associated

The default heading for the list of links is REFERENCES. To output a different heading, set a value for the *man.links.section.heading* parameter.

Note

The link list is also displayed (but without numbers) if the value of *man.links.list.enabled* is non-zero.

If the value of *man.links.are.numbered* is zero, numbering of links is suppressed; only the link contents are displayed inline.

Important

If you are thinking about disabling link numbering by setting the value of *man.links.are.numbered* to zero, before you do so, first take some time to carefully consider the information needs and experiences of your users. The square-bracketed numbers displayed inline before links may seem obstrusive and aesthetically unpleasing[2], but in a text-only output format, the numbered-links/link-listing mechanism is the only practical way of associating inline text with URLs.

Also, users of “text based” browsers such as **lynx** will already be accustomed to seeing inline numbers for links. And various "man to html" applications, such as the widely used **man2html**[3] (VH-Man2html) application, can automatically turn URLs into "real" HTML hyperlinks in

[1] A “non-empty” link is one that looks like this:

```
<ulink url="http://docbook.sf.net/snapshot/xsl/doc/manpages/">manpages</ulink>
```

an “empty link” is on that looks like this:

```
<ulink url="http://docbook.sf.net/snapshot/xsl/doc/manpages/"/>
```

[2] You might think that it would be better to just display URLs for non-empty links inline, after their content, rather than displaying square-bracketed numbers all over the place. But it's not better. In fact, it's not even practical, because many (most) URLs for links are too long to be displayed inline. They end up overflowing the right margin. You can set a non-zero value for *man.break.after.slash* parameter to deal with that, but it could be argued that what you end up with is at least as ugly, and definitely more obstrusive, then having short square-bracketed numbers displayed inline.

[3] http://users.actrix.gen.nz/michael/vhman2html.html

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

output. So leaving *man.links.are.numbered* at its default (non-zero) value ensures that no link information is lost in your man-page output. It just gets “rearranged”.

The handling of empty links is not affected by this parameter. Empty links are handled simply by displaying their URLs inline. Empty links are never auto-numbered.

Note

Currently, this parameter only affects output for `ulink`s.

If you disable link numbering, you should probably also set *man.links.are.underlined* to zero (to disable link underlining).

Name

man.links.are.underlined — Underline links?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.links.are.underlined">1</xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *man.links.are.underlined* is non-zero (the default), then the contents of links are rendered with an underline.

If the value of *man.links.are.underlined* is zero, links are displayed without any underlining.

Note

Currently, this parameter only affects output for `ulink`s.

If you set *man.links.are.numbered* and/or *man.links.list.enabled* to zero (disabled), then you should probably also set *man.links.are.underlined* to zero. But if *man.links.are.numbered* is non-zero (enabled), you should probably set a non-zero value for *man.links.are.underlined* also[1].

Name

man.links.list.enabled — Display list of links at end of man page?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.links.list.enabled">1</xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *man.links.list.enabled* is non-zero (the default), then a list of links is added to the end of the output man page.

[1] If the main purpose of underlining of links in most output formats it to indicate that the underlined text is “clickable”, given that links rendered in man pages are not “real” hyperlinks that users can click on, it might seem like there is never a good reason to have link contents underlined in man output.

In fact, if you suppress the display of inline link references (by setting *man.links.are.numbered* to zero), there is no good reason to have links underlined. However, if *man.links.are.numbered* is non-zero, having links underlined may (arguably) serve a purpose: It provides “context” information about exactly what part of the text is being “annotated” by the link. Depending on how you use mark up your content, that context information may or may not have value.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

If the value of *man.links.list.enabled* is zero, the list is suppressed -- unless link numbering is enabled (that is, if *man.links.are.numbered* is non-zero), in which case, that setting overrides the *man.links.list.enabled* setting, and the link list is still displayed. The reason is that link numbering only makes sense if a (numbered) list of links is also generated.

Note

Various “man to html” applications, such as the widely used **man2html**[1] (VH-Man2html) application, can automatically turn URLs into “real” HTML hyperlinks in output. So leaving *man.links.list.enabled* at its default (non-zero) value ensures that no link URLs are lost in your man-page output. They just get “rearranged”. So if you are thinking about disabling link listing by setting the value of *man.links.list.enabled* to zero, before you do so, first take some time to carefully consider the information needs and experiences of your users. The URLs are useful information even if they aren't “real” (clickable) hyperlinks.

To “turn off” numbering of links in the list, set *man.links.are.numbered* to zero. The list will still be displayed; it will just be displayed without the numbers[2]

The default heading for the section in which the list appears is REFERENCES. To change that, set a non-empty value for the *man.links.list.heading* parameter.

Along with the URL for each link, the link list includes the contents of the link. The list thus includes only non-empty[3] links. Empty links are never included, and never numbered. They are simply displayed inline, without any numbering.

In addition, if there are multiple instances of links in a refentry that have the same URL, the URL is listed only once. The contents listed for that link are the contents of the first link which has that URL.

Note

Currently, this parameter only affects output for ulinks.

If you disable link listing, you should probably also set *man.links.are.underlined* to zero (to disable link underlining).

Name

man.links.list.heading — Specifies an alternate name for links list

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.links.list.heading" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

[1] http://users.actrix.gen.nz/michael/vhman2html.html

[2] It can still “make sense” to have the list of links displayed even if you have link numbering turned off. In that case, your list of links basically becomes a “list of references” without any association with specific text in your document. This is probably the best option if you find the inline link numbering obtrusive. Your users will still have access to the URLs and link contents, without being annoyed by the presence of inline link numbering.

[3] A “non-empty” link is one that looks like this:

```
<ulink url="http://docbook.sf.net/snapshot/xsl/doc/manpages/">manpages</ulink>
```

an “empty link” is on that looks like this:

```
<ulink url="http://docbook.sf.net/snapshot/xsl/doc/manpages/"/>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

If the value of the *man.links.are.numbered* parameter and/or the *man.links.list.enabled* parameter is non-zero (the defaults for both are non-zero), a numbered list of URLs is generated near the end of each man page. The default section heading for the list of links is the equivalent of the English word `REFERENCES` in the current locale. To cause an alternate heading to be displayed, set a non-empty value for the *man.links.list.heading* parameter -- for example, `LINKS`.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Lists

Name

man.segtitle.suppress — Suppress display of segtitle contents?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.segtitle.suppress" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *man.segtitle.suppress* is non-zero, then display of segtitle contents is suppressed in output.

Name

variablelist.term.separator — Text to separate terms within a multi-term varlistentry

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="variablelist.term.separator">, </xsl:param>
```

Description

When a varlistentry contains multiple term elements, the string specified in the value of the *variablelist.term.separator* parameter is placed after each term except the last.

Note

To generate a line break between multiple terms in a varlistentry, set a non-zero value for the *variablelist.term.break.after* parameter. If you do so, you may also want to set the value of the *variablelist.term.separator* parameter to an empty string (to suppress rendering of the default comma and space after each term).

Name

variablelist.term.break.after — Generate line break after each term within a multi-term varlistentry?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="variablelist.term.break.after">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

Set a non-zero value for the *variablelist.term.break.after* parameter to generate a line break between terms in a multi-term varlistentry.

Note

If you set a non-zero value for *variablelist.term.break.after*, you may also want to set the value of the *variablelist.term.separator* parameter to an empty string (to suppress rendering of the default comma and space after each term).

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Character/string substitution

Name

man.charmap.enabled — Apply character map before final output?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.charmap.enabled" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of the *man.charmap.enabled* parameter is non-zero, a "character map" is used to substitute certain Unicode symbols and special characters with appropriate roff/groff equivalents, just before writing each man-page file to the filesystem. If instead the value of *man.charmap.enabled* is zero, Unicode characters are passed through "as is".

Details

For converting certain Unicode symbols and special characters in UTF-8 or UTF-16 encoded XML source to appropriate groff/roff equivalents in man-page output, the DocBook XSL Stylesheets distribution includes a roff character map[1] that is compliant with the XSLT character map[2] format as detailed in the XSLT 2.0 specification. The map contains more than 800 character mappings and can be considered the standard roff character map for the distribution.

You can use the *man.charmap.uri* parameter to specify a URI for the location for an alternate roff character map to use in place of the standard roff character map provided in the distribution.

You can also use a subset of a character map. For details, see the *man.charmap.use.subset* and *man.charmap.subset.profile* parameters.

Name

man.charmap.uri — URI for custom roff character map

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.charmap.uri" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

For converting certain Unicode symbols and special characters in UTF-8 or UTF-16 encoded XML source to appropriate groff/roff equivalents in man-page output, the DocBook XSL Stylesheets distribution includes an XSLT character map[1]. That character map can be considered the standard roff character map for the distribution.

If the value of the *man.charmap.uri* parameter is non-empty, that value is used as the URI for the location for an alternate roff character map to use in place of the standard roff character map provided in the distribution.

[1] http://docbook.sourceforge.net/snapshot/xsl/manpages/charmap.groff.xsl
[2] http://www.w3.org/TR/xslt20/#character-maps
[1] http://www.w3.org/TR/xslt20/#character-maps

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Warning

Do not set a value for *man.charmap.uri* unless you have a custom roff character map that differs from the standard one provided in the distribution.

Name

man.charmap.use.subset — Use subset of character map instead of full map?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.charmap.use.subset" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of the *man.charmap.use.subset* parameter is non-zero, a subset of the roff character map is used instead of the full roff character map. The profile of the subset used is specified by the *man.charmap.subset.profile* parameter.

Note

You may want to experiment with setting a non-zero value of *man.charmap.use.subset*, so that the full character map is used. Depending on which XSLT engine you run, setting a non-zero value for *man.charmap.use.subset* may significantly increase the time needed to process your documents. Or it may not. For example, if you set it and run it with xsltproc, it seems to dramatically increase processing time; on the other hand, if you set it and run it with Saxon, it does not seem to increase processing time nearly as much.

If processing time is not a important concern and/or you can tolerate the increase in processing time imposed by using the full character map, set *man.charmap.use.subset* to zero.

Details

For converting certain Unicode symbols and special characters in UTF-8 or UTF-16 encoded XML source to appropriate groff/roff equivalents in man-page output, the DocBook XSL Stylesheets distribution includes a roff character map[1] that is compliant with the XSLT character map[2] format as detailed in the XSLT 2.0 specification. The map contains more than 800 character mappings and can be considered the standard roff character map for the distribution.

Note

You can use the *man.charmap.uri* parameter to specify a URI for the location for an alternate roff character map to use in place of the standard roff character map provided in the distribution.

Because it is not terrifically efficient to use the standard 800-character character map in full -- and for most (or all) users, never necessary to use it in full -- the DocBook XSL Stylesheets support a mechanism for using, within any given character map, a subset of character mappings instead of the full set. You can use the *man.charmap.subset.profile* parameter to tune the profile of that subset to use.

Name

man.charmap.subset.profile — Profile of character map subset

[1] http://docbook.sourceforge.net/snapshot/xsl/manpages/charmap.groff.xsl
[2] http://www.w3.org/TR/xslt20/#character-maps

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.charmap.subset.profile">
@*[local-name() = 'block'] = 'Miscellaneous Technical' or
(@*[local-name() = 'block'] = 'C1 Controls And Latin-1 Supplement (Latin-1 Supplement)' \
and
 @*[local-name() = 'class'] = 'symbols'
) or
(@*[local-name() = 'block'] = 'General Punctuation' and
 (@*[local-name() = 'class'] = 'spaces' or
  @*[local-name() = 'class'] = 'dashes' or
  @*[local-name() = 'class'] = 'quotes' or
  @*[local-name() = 'class'] = 'bullets'
 )
) or
@*[local-name() = 'name'] = 'HORIZONTAL ELLIPSIS' or
@*[local-name() = 'name'] = 'WORD JOINER' or
@*[local-name() = 'name'] = 'SERVICE MARK' or
@*[local-name() = 'name'] = 'TRADE MARK SIGN' or
@*[local-name() = 'name'] = 'ZERO WIDTH NO-BREAK SPACE'
</xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of the *man.charmap.use.subset* parameter is non-zero, The character-map subset specified by the *man.charmap.subset.profile* parameter is used instead of the full roff character map.

The value of *man.charmap.subset.profile* is a string representating an XPath expression that matches attribute names and values for `output-character` elements in the character map.

The attributes supported in the standard roff character map included in the distribution[1] are:

character
: a raw Unicode character or numeric Unicode character-entity value (either in decimal or hex); all characters have this attribute

name
: a standard full/long ISO/Unicode character name (e.g., "OHM SIGN"); all characters have this attribute

block
: a standard Unicode "block" name (e.g., "General Punctuation"); all characters have this attribute. For the full list of Unicode block names supported in the standard roff character map, see the section called “Supported Unicode block names and "class" values”.

class
: a class of characters (e.g., "spaces"). Not all characters have this attribute; currently, it is used only with certain characters within the "C1 Controls And Latin-1 Supplement" and "General Punctuation" blocks. For details, see the section called “Supported Unicode block names and "class" values”.

entity
: an ISO entity name (e.g., "ohm"); not all characters have this attribute, because not all characters have ISO entity names; for example, of the 800 or so characters in the standard roff character map included in the distribution, only around 300 have ISO entity names.

string
: a string representating an roff/groff escape-code (with "@esc@" used in place of the backslash), or a simple ASCII string; all characters in the roff character map have this attribute

[1] http://docbook.sourceforge.net/snapshot/xsl/manpages/charmap.groff.xsl

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

The value of *man.charmap.subset.profile* is evaluated as an XPath expression at run-time to select a portion of the roff character map to use. You can tune the subset used by adding or removing parts. For example, if you need to use a wide range of mathematical operators in a document, and you want to have them converted into roff markup properly, you might add the following:

```
@*[local-name() = 'block'] ='MathematicalOperators'
```

That will cause a additional set of around 67 additional "math" characters to be converted into roff markup.

Note

Depending on which XSLT engine you use, either the EXSLT `dyn:evaluate` extension function (for xsltproc or Xalan) or `saxon:evaluate` extensio function (for Saxon) are used to dynamically evaluate the value of *man.charmap.subset.profile* at run-time. If you don't use xsltproc, Saxon, Xalan -- or some other XSLT engine that supports `dyn:evaluate` -- you must either set the value of the *man.charmap.use.subset* parameter to zero and process your documents using the full character map instead, or set the value of the *man.charmap.enabled* parameter to zero instead (so that character-map processing is disabled completely.

An alternative to using *man.charmap.subset.profile* is to create your own custom character map, and set the value of *man.charmap.uri* to the URI/filename for that. If you use a custom character map, you will probably want to include in it just the characters you want to use, and so you will most likely also want to set the value of *man.charmap.use.subset* to zero.

You can create a custom character map by making a copy of the standard roff character map[2] provided in the distribution, and then adding to, changing, and/or deleting from that.

Caution

If you author your DocBook XML source in UTF-8 or UTF-16 encoding and aren't sure what OSes or environments your man-page output might end up being viewed on, and not sure what version of nroff/groff those environments might have, you should be careful about what Unicode symbols and special characters you use in your source and what parts you add to the value of *man.charmap.subset.profile*.

Many of the escape codes used are specific to groff and using them may not provide the expected output on an OS or environment that uses nroff instead of groff.

On the other hand, if you intend for your man-page output to be viewed only on modern systems (for example, GNU/Linux systems, FreeBSD systems, or Cygwin environments) that have a good, up-to-date groff, then you can safely include a wide range of Unicode symbols and special characters in your UTF-8 or UTF-16 encoded DocBook XML source and add any of the supported Unicode block names to the value of *man.charmap.subset.profile*.

For other details, see the documentation for the *man.charmap.use.subset* parameter.

Supported Unicode block names and "class" values

Below is the full list of Unicode block names and "class" values supported in the standard roff stylesheet provided in the distribution, along with a description of which codepoints from the Unicode range corresponding to that block name or block/class combination are supported.

- C1 Controls And Latin-1 Supplement (Latin-1 Supplement)[3] (x00a0 to x00ff)

[2] http://docbook.sourceforge.net/snapshot/xsl/manpages/charmap.groff.xsl
[3] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&id=C1%20Controls%20and%20Latin-1%20Supplement%20(Latin-1%20Supplement)

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

class values

- symbols
- letters

- Latin Extended-A[4] (x0100 to x017f, partial)
- Spacing Modifier Letters[5] (x02b0 to x02ee, partial)
- Greek and Coptic[6] (x0370 to x03ff, partial)
- General Punctuation[7] (x2000 to x206f, partial)

class values

- spaces[8]
- dashes[9]
- quotes
- daggers
- bullets
- leaders
- primes

- Superscripts and Subscripts[10] (x2070 to x209f)
- Currency Symbols[11] (x20a0 to x20b1)
- Letterlike Symbols[12] (x2100 to x214b)
- Number Forms[13] (x2150 to x218f)
- Arrows[14] (x2190 to x21ff, partial)
- Mathematical Operators[15] (x2200 to x22ff, partial)
- Control Pictures[16] (x2400 to x243f)
- Enclosed Alphanumerics[17] (x2460 to x24ff)
- Geometric Shapes[18] (x25a0 to x25f7, partial)

[4] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&id=Latin%20Extended-A
[5] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&id=Spacing%20Modifier%20Letters
[6] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&id=Greek%20and%20Coptic
[7] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&id=General%20Punctuation
[8] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&start=8192&end=8203
[9] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&start=8208&end=8213
[10] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&id=Superscripts%20and%20Subscripts
[11] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&id=Currency%20Symbols
[12] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&id=Letterlike%20Symbols
[13] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&id=Number%20Forms
[14] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&id=Arrows
[15] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&id=Mathematical%20Operators
[16] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&id=Control%20Pictures
[17] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&id=Enclosed%20Alphanumerics
[18] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&id=Geometric%20Shapes

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

- Miscellaneous Symbols[19] (x2600 to x26ff, partial)
- Dingbats[20] (x2700 to x27be, partial)
- Alphabetic Presentation Forms[21] (xfb00 to xfb04 only)

Name

man.string.subst.map.local.pre — Specifies “local” string substitutions

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.string.subst.map.local.pre"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Use the *man.string.subst.map.local.pre* parameter to specify any “local” string substitutions to perform over the entire roff source for each man page *before* performing the string substitutions specified by the *man.string.subst.map* parameter.

For details about the format of this parameter, see the documentation for the *man.string.subst.map* parameter.

Name

man.string.subst.map — Specifies a set of string substitutions

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.string.subst.map">

  <!-- ******************************************************************* -->
  <!-- *  -->
  <!-- * The backslash and dot (\, .) characters have special meaning -->
  <!-- * for roff, so we escape those characters when they appear in -->
  <!-- * the source content, and we use certain (arbitrarily -->
  <!-- * selected) Unicode characters as the internal representations -->
  <!-- * for those characters, then replace them with real -->
  <!-- * backslashes and dots in output. In addition, for certain -->
  <!-- * reasons, we do the same thing for dashes. The mappings of -->
  <!-- * those characters to the Unicode characters we use to -->
  <!-- * represent them is hard-coded: -->
  <!-- *  -->
  <!-- *   - U+2591 = dash -->
  <!-- *   - U+2593 = backslash -->
  <!-- *   - U+2302 = dot -->
  <!-- *  -->
  <!-- ******************************************************************* -->

  <!-- * escape backslashes in content; we use "\e" instead of "\\" -->
  <!-- * because the groff docs say that's the correct thing to do; also -->
  <!-- * because testing shows that "\\" doesn't always work as expected; -->
  <!-- * for example, "\\" within a table seems to mess things up -->
  <substitution oldstring="\" newstring="\e"></substitution>
  <!-- * fix bad font-request capitalization in .SH (stylesheet artifact) -->
  <substitution oldstring=" FB" newstring="\fB"></substitution>
  <substitution oldstring=" FI" newstring="\fI"></substitution>
  <substitution oldstring=" FR" newstring="\fR"></substitution>
  <!-- * remove no-break marker at beginning of line (stylesheet artifact) -->
  <substitution oldstring="  " newstring=" "></substitution>
  <!-- * replace U+2580 no-break marker (stylesheet-added) w/ no-break space -->
```

[19] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&id=Miscellaneous%20Symbols
[20] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&id=Dingbats
[21] http://zvon.org/other/charSearch/PHP/search.php?searchType=103&id=Alphabetic%20Presentation%20Forms

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
  <substitution oldstring=" " newstring="\ "></substitution>
  <!-- * replace U+2593 marker with backslash -->
  <substitution oldstring=" " newstring="\"></substitution>
  <!-- * escape dashes in content (only at line beginnings) -->
  <substitution oldstring="
." newstring="
\&."></substitution>
  <!-- * replace U+2302 marker with dot -->
  <substitution oldstring=" " newstring="."></substitution>
  <!-- * escape dashes in content -->
  <substitution oldstring="-" newstring="\-"></substitution>
  <!-- * replace U+2591 marker with dash -->
  <substitution oldstring=" " newstring="-"></substitution>

  <!-- ==================================================================== -->

  <!-- * squeeze multiple newlines before a roff request  -->
  <substitution oldstring="

." newstring="
."></substitution>
  <!-- * remove any .sp occurences that directly follow a .PP  -->
  <substitution oldstring=".PP
.sp" newstring=".PP"></substitution>
  <!-- * squeeze multiple newlines after start of no-fill (verbatim) env. -->
  <substitution oldstring=".nf

" newstring=".nf
"></substitution>
  <!-- * squeeze multiple newlines after REstoring margin -->
  <substitution oldstring=".RE

" newstring=".RE
"></substitution>
  <!-- * an apostrophe at the beginning of a line gets interpreted as a -->
  <!-- * roff request (groff(7) says it is "the non-breaking control -->
  <!-- * character"); so we must add backslash before any apostrophe -->
  <!-- * found at the start of a line -->
  <substitution oldstring="
'" newstring="
\'"></substitution>
  <!-- * -->
  <!-- * non-breaking space -->
  <!-- * -->
  <!-- * A no-break space can be written two ways in roff; the difference, -->
  <!-- * according to the "Page Motions" node in the groff info page, ixsl: -->
  <!-- * -->
  <!-- *   "\ " = -->
  <!-- *   An unbreakable and unpaddable (i.e. not expanded during filling) -->
  <!-- *   space. -->
  <!-- * -->
  <!-- *   "\~" = -->
  <!-- *   An unbreakable space that stretches like a normal -->
  <!-- *   inter-word space when a line is adjusted."  -->
  <!-- * -->
  <!-- * Unfortunately, roff seems to do some weird things with long -->
  <!-- * lines that only have words separated by "\~" spaces, so it's -->
  <!-- * safer just to stick with the "\ " space -->
  <substitution oldstring=" " newstring="\ "></substitution>
  <!-- * x2008 is a "punctuation space"; we must replace it here because, -->
  <!-- * for certain reasons, the stylesheets add it before and after -->
  <!-- * every Parameter in Funcprototype output -->
  <substitution oldstring=" " newstring=" "></substitution>
  <!-- * -->
  <!-- * Now deal with some other characters that are added by the -->
  <!-- * stylesheets during processing. -->
  <!-- * -->
  <!-- * bullet -->
  <substitution oldstring="•" newstring="\(bu"></substitution>
  <!-- * left double quote -->
  <substitution oldstring="“" newstring="\(lq"></substitution>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
  <!-- * right double quote -->
  <substitution oldstring="”" newstring="\(rq"></substitution>
  <!-- * left single quote -->
  <substitution oldstring="‘" newstring="\(oq"></substitution>
  <!-- * right single quote -->
  <substitution oldstring="’" newstring="\(cq"></substitution>
  <!-- * copyright sign -->
  <substitution oldstring="©" newstring="\(co"></substitution>
  <!-- * registered sign -->
  <substitution oldstring="®" newstring="\(rg"></substitution>
  <!-- * servicemark... -->
  <!-- * There is no groff equivalent for it. -->
  <substitution oldstring=" " newstring="(SM)"></substitution>
  <!-- * trademark... -->
  <!-- * We don't do "\(tm" because for console output, -->
  <!-- * groff just renders that as "tm"; that is: -->
  <!-- * -->
  <!-- *   Product&#x2122; -> Producttm -->
  <!-- * -->
  <!-- * So we just make it to "(TM)" instead; thus: -->
  <!-- * -->
  <!-- *   Product&#x2122; -> Product(TM) -->
  <substitution oldstring="™" newstring="(TM)"></substitution>

  <!-- ==================================================================== -->

  <!-- * we use U+2592 as a marker for the newline before output of <sbr>; -->
  <!-- * so we now need to replace U+2592 marker with a real newline -->
  <substitution oldstring="▒" newstring="
"></substitution>

</xsl:param>
```

Description

The *man.string.subst.map* parameter contains a map that specifies a set of string substitutions to perform over the entire roff source for each man page, either just before generating final man-page output (that is, before writing man-page files to disk) or, if the value of the *man.charmap.enabled* parameter is non-zero, before applying the roff character map.

You can use *man.string.subst.map* as a “lightweight” character map to perform “essential” substitutions -- that is, substitutions that are *always* performed, even if the value of the *man.charmap.enabled* parameter is zero. For example, you can use it to replace quotation marks or other special characters that are generated by the DocBook XSL stylesheets for a particular locale setting (as opposed to those characters that are actually in source XML documents), or to replace any special characters that may be automatically generated by a particular customization of the DocBook XSL stylesheets.

Warning

Do you not change value of the *man.string.subst.map* parameter unless you are sure what you are doing. First consider adding your string-substitution mappings to either or both of the following parameters:

man.string.subst.map.local.pre
: applied before *man.string.subst.map*

man.string.subst.map.local.post
: applied after *man.string.subst.map*

By default, both of those parameters contain no string substitutions. They are intended as a means for you to specify your own local string-substitution mappings.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

If you remove any of default mappings from the value of the *man.string.subst.map* parameter, you are likely to end up with broken output. And be very about adding anything to it; it's used for doing string substitution over the entire roff source of each man page – it causes target strings to be replaced in roff requests and escapes, not just in the visible contents of the page.

Contents of the substitution map

The string-substitution map contains one or more `substitution` elements, each of which has two attributes:

oldstring
: string to replace

newstring
: string with which to replace `oldstring`

It may also include XML comments (that is, delimited with "`<!--`" and "`-->`").

About escaping and replacing backslash, dot, and dash

The backslash and dot (\, .) characters have special meaning for roff, so we:

- escape backslashes and dots where they appear in the source content
- use certain (arbitrarily selected) Unicode characters as "markers" – internal representations within the stylesheet – for backslashes and dots
- replace the Unicode characters with real backslashes and dotes before output gets serialized

In addition, for certain reasons, we do the same thing for dashes.

The mappings of dash, backslash, and dot to the Unicode characters we use to represent them is hard-coded in the stylesheet:

- `U+2591` = dash
- `U+2593` = backslash
- `U+2302` = dot

Those Unicode characters were chosen on the assumption that they are never used in content intended for output to man pages. It would be possible to provide a way for configuring the mappings (using XSLT parameters), but doing so would make the stylesheet code much more verbose and harder to read.

Name

man.string.subst.map.local.post — Specifies "local" string substitutions

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.string.subst.map.local.post"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Use the *man.string.subst.map.local.post* parameter to specify any "local" string substitutions to perform over the entire roff source for each man page *after* performing the string substitutions specified by the *man.string.subst.map* parameter.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

For details about the format of this parameter, see the documentation for the *`man.string.subst.map`* parameter.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Refentry metadata gathering

Name

refentry.meta.get.quietly — Suppress notes and warnings when gathering refentry metadata?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.meta.get.quietly" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If zero (the default), notes and warnings about “missing” markup are generated during gathering of refentry metadata. If non-zero, the metadata is gathered “quietly” -- that is, the notes and warnings are suppressed.

Tip

If you are processing a large amount of `refentry` content, you may be able to speed up processing significantly by setting a non-zero value for *`refentry.meta.get.quietly`*.

Name

refentry.date.profile — Specifies profile for refentry "date" data

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.date.profile">
  (($info[//date])[last()]/date)[1]|
  (($info[//pubdate])[last()]/pubdate)[1]
</xsl:param>
```

Description

The value of *`refentry.date.profile`* is a string representing an XPath expression. It is evaluated at run-time and used only if *`refentry.date.profile.enabled`* is non-zero. Otherwise, the `refentry` metadata-gathering logic "hard coded" into the stylesheets is used.

The `man(7)` man page describes this content as "the date of the last revision". In man pages, it is the content that is usually displayed in the center footer.

Name

refentry.date.profile.enabled — Enable refentry "date" profiling?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.date.profile.enabled">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *`refentry.date.profile.enabled`* is non-zero, then during `refentry` metadata gathering, the info profile specified by the customizable *`refentry.date.profile`* parameter is used.

If instead the value of *`refentry.date.profile.enabled`* is zero (the default), then "hard coded" logic within the DocBook XSL stylesheets is used for gathering `refentry` "date" data.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

If you find that the default `refentry` metadata-gathering behavior is causing incorrect "date" data to show up in your output, then consider setting a non-zero value for *`refentry.date.profile.enabled`* and adjusting the value of *`refentry.date.profile`* to cause correct data to be gathered.

Note that the terms "source" and "date" have special meanings in this context. For details, see the documentation for the *`refentry.date.profile`* parameter.

Name

refentry.manual.profile — Specifies profile for refentry "manual" data

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.manual.profile">
  (($info[//title])[last()]/title)[1]|
  ../title/node()
</xsl:param>
```

Description

The value of *`refentry.manual.profile`* is a string representing an XPath expression. It is evaluated at run-time and used only if *`refentry.manual.profile.enabled`* is non-zero. Otherwise, the `refentry` metadata-gathering logic "hard coded" into the stylesheets is used.

In man pages, this content is usually displayed in the middle of the header of the page. The `man(7)` man page describes this as "the title of the manual (e.g., *Linux Programmer's Manual*)". Here are some examples from existing man pages:

- *dpkg utilities* (**dpkg-name**)
- *User Contributed Perl Documentation* (**GET**)
- *GNU Development Tools* (**ld**)
- *Emperor Norton Utilities* (**ddate**)
- *Debian GNU/Linux manual* (**faked**)
- *GIMP Manual Pages* (**gimp**)
- *KDOC Documentation System* (**qt2kdoc**)

Name

refentry.manual.profile.enabled — Enable refentry "manual" profiling?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.manual.profile.enabled">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *`refentry.manual.profile.enabled`* is non-zero, then during `refentry` metadata gathering, the info profile specified by the customizable *`refentry.manual.profile`* parameter is used.

If instead the value of *`refentry.manual.profile.enabled`* is zero (the default), then "hard coded" logic within the DocBook XSL stylesheets is used for gathering `refentry` "manual" data.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

If you find that the default `refentry` metadata-gathering behavior is causing incorrect "manual" data to show up in your output, then consider setting a non-zero value for *`refentry.manual.profile.enabled`* and adjusting the value of *`refentry.manual.profile`* to cause correct data to be gathered.

Note that the term "manual" has a special meanings in this context. For details, see the documentation for the *`refentry.manual.profile`* parameter.

Name

refentry.source.name.suppress — Suppress "name" part of refentry "source" contents?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.source.name.suppress">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *`refentry.source.name.suppress`* is non-zero, then during `refentry` metadata gathering, no "source name" data is added to the `refentry` "source" contents. Instead (unless *`refentry.version.suppress`* is also non-zero), only "version" data is added to the "source" contents.

If you find that the `refentry` metadata gathering mechanism is causing unwanted "source name" data to show up in your output -- for example, in the footer (or possibly header) of a man page -- then you might consider setting a non-zero value for *`refentry.source.name.suppress`*.

Note that the terms "source", "source name", and "version" have special meanings in this context. For details, see the documentation for the *`refentry.source.name.profile`* parameter.

Name

refentry.source.name.profile — Specifies profile for refentry "source name" data

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.source.name.profile">
  (($info[//productname])[last()]/productname)[1]|
  (($info[//corpname])[last()]/corpname)[1]|
  (($info[//corpcredit])[last()]/corpcredit)[1]|
  (($info[//corpauthor])[last()]/corpauthor)[1]|
  (($info[//orgname])[last()]/orgname)[1]|
  (($info[//publishername])[last()]/publishername)[1]
</xsl:param>
```

Description

The value of *`refentry.source.name.profile`* is a string representing an XPath expression. It is evaluated at run-time and used only if *`refentry.source.name.profile.enabled`* is non-zero. Otherwise, the `refentry` metadata-gathering logic "hard coded" into the stylesheets is used.

A "source name" is one part of a (potentially) two-part *`Name Version`* "source" field. In man pages, it is usually displayed in the left footer of the page. It typically indicates the software system or product that the item documented in the man page belongs to. The `man(7)` man page describes it as "the source of the command", and provides the following examples:

- For binaries, use something like: GNU, NET-2, SLS Distribution, MCC Distribution.
- For system calls, use the version of the kernel that you are currently looking at: Linux 0.99.11.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

- For library calls, use the source of the function: GNU, BSD 4.3, Linux DLL 4.4.1.

In practice, there are many pages that simply have a Version number in the "source" field. So, it looks like what we have is a two-part field, *Name Version*, where:

Name
: product name (e.g., BSD) or org. name (e.g., GNU)

Version
: version number

Each part is optional. If the *Name* is a product name, then the *Version* is probably the version of the product. Or there may be no *Name*, in which case, if there is a *Version*, it is probably the version of the item itself, not the product it is part of. Or, if the *Name* is an organization name, then there probably will be no *Version*.

Name

refentry.source.name.profile.enabled — Enable refentry "source name" profiling?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.source.name.profile.enabled">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *refentry.source.name.profile.enabled* is non-zero, then during refentry metadata gathering, the info profile specified by the customizable *refentry.source.name.profile* parameter is used.

If instead the value of *refentry.source.name.profile.enabled* is zero (the default), then "hard coded" logic within the DocBook XSL stylesheets is used for gathering refentry "source name" data.

If you find that the default refentry metadata-gathering behavior is causing incorrect "source name" data to show up in your output, then consider setting a non-zero value for *refentry.source.name.profile.enabled* and adjusting the value of *refentry.source.name.profile* to cause correct data to be gathered.

Note that the terms "source" and "source name" have special meanings in this context. For details, see the documentation for the *refentry.source.name.profile* parameter.

Name

refentry.version.suppress — Suppress "version" part of refentry "source" contents?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.version.suppress">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *refentry.version.suppress* is non-zero, then during refentry metadata gathering, no "version" data is added to the refentry "source" contents. Instead (unless *refentry.source.name.suppress* is also non-zero), only "source name" data is added to the "source" contents.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

If you find that the `refentry` metadata gathering mechanism is causing unwanted "version" data to show up in your output -- for example, in the footer (or possibly header) of a man page -- then you might consider setting a non-zero value for *`refentry.version.suppress`*.

Note that the terms "source", "source name", and "version" have special meanings in this context. For details, see the documentation for the *`refentry.source.name.profile`* parameter.

Name

refentry.version.profile — Specifies profile for refentry "version" data

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.version.profile">
  (($info[//productnumber])[last()]/productnumber)[1]|
  (($info[//edition])[last()]/edition)[1]|
  (($info[//releaseinfo])[last()]/releaseinfo)[1]
</xsl:param>
```

Description

The value of *`refentry.version.profile`* is a string representing an XPath expression. It is evaluated at run-time and used only if *`refentry.version.profile.enabled`* is non-zero. Otherwise, the `refentry` metadata-gathering logic "hard coded" into the stylesheets is used.

A "source.name" is one part of a (potentially) two-part *`Name Version`* "source" field. For more details, see the documentation for the *`refentry.source.name.profile`* parameter.

Name

refentry.version.profile.enabled — Enable refentry "version" profiling?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.version.profile.enabled">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *`refentry.version.profile.enabled`* is non-zero, then during `refentry` metadata gathering, the info profile specified by the customizable *`refentry.version.profile`* parameter is used.

If instead the value of *`refentry.version.profile.enabled`* is zero (the default), then "hard coded" logic within the DocBook XSL stylesheets is used for gathering `refentry` "version" data.

If you find that the default `refentry` metadata-gathering behavior is causing incorrect "version" data to show up in your output, then consider setting a non-zero value for *`refentry.version.profile.enabled`* and adjusting the value of *`refentry.version.profile`* to cause correct data to be gathered.

Note that the terms "source" and "version" have special meanings in this context. For details, see the documentation for the *`refentry.version.profile`* parameter.

Name

refentry.manual.fallback.profile — Specifies profile of "fallback" for refentry "manual" data

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.manual.fallback.profile">
refmeta/refmiscinfo[1]/node()</xsl:param>
```

Description

The value of *`refentry.manual.fallback.profile`* is a string representing an XPath expression. It is evaluated at run-time and used only if no "manual" data can be found by other means (that is, either using the `refentry` metadata-gathering logic "hard coded" in the stylesheets, or the value of *`refentry.manual.profile`*, if it is enabled).

Important

Depending on which XSLT engine you run, either the EXSLT `dyn:evaluate` extension function (for xsltproc or Xalan) or `saxon:evaluate` extension function (for Saxon) are used to dynamically evaluate the value of *`refentry.manual.fallback.profile`* at run-time. If you don't use xsltproc, Saxon, Xalan -- or some other XSLT engine that supports `dyn:evaluate` -- you must manually disable fallback processing by setting an empty value for the *`refentry.manual.fallback.profile`* parameter.

Name

refentry.source.fallback.profile — Specifies profile of "fallback" for refentry "source" data

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="refentry.source.fallback.profile">
refmeta/refmiscinfo[1]/node()</xsl:param>
```

Description

The value of *`refentry.source.fallback.profile`* is a string representing an XPath expression. It is evaluated at run-time and used only if no "source" data can be found by other means (that is, either using the `refentry` metadata-gathering logic "hard coded" in the stylesheets, or the value of the *`refentry.source.name.profile`* and *`refentry.version.profile`* parameters, if those are enabled).

Important

Depending on which XSLT engine you run, either the EXSLT `dyn:evaluate` extension function (for xsltproc or Xalan) or `saxon:evaluate` extension function (for Saxon) are used to dynamically evaluate the value of *`refentry.source.fallback.profile`* at run-time. If you don't use xsltproc, Saxon, Xalan -- or some other XSLT engine that supports `dyn:evaluate` -- you must manually disable fallback processing by setting an empty value for the *`refentry.source.fallback.profile`* parameter.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Page header/footer

Name

man.th.extra1.suppress — Suppress extra1 part of header/footer?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.th.extra1.suppress">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *man.th.extra1.suppress* is non-zero, then the `extra1` part of the `.TH` title line header/footer is suppressed.

The content of the `extra1` field is almost always displayed in the center footer of the page and is, universally, a date.

Name

man.th.extra2.suppress — Suppress extra2 part of header/footer?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.th.extra2.suppress">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *man.th.extra2.suppress* is non-zero, then the `extra2` part of the `.TH` title line header/footer is suppressed.

The content of the `extra2` field is usually displayed in the left footer of the page and is typically "source" data, often in the form *Name Version*; for example, "GTK+ 1.2" (from the `gtk-options(7)` man page).

Note

You can use the *refentry.source.name.suppress* and *refentry.version.suppress* parameters to independently suppress the *Name* and *Version* parts of the `extra2` field.

Name

man.th.extra3.suppress — Suppress extra3 part of header/footer?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.th.extra3.suppress">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of *man.th.extra3.suppress* is non-zero, then the `extra3` part of the `.TH` title line header/footer is suppressed.

The content of the `extra3` field is usually displayed in the middle header of the page and is typically a "manual name"; for example, "GTK+ User's Manual" (from the `gtk-options(7)` man page).

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

man.th.title.max.length — Maximum length of title in header/footer

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.th.title.max.length">20</xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the maximum permitted length of the title part of the man-page `.TH` title line header/footer. If the title exceeds the maxiumum specified, it is truncated down to the maximum permitted length.

Details

Every man page generated using the DocBook stylesheets has a title line, specified using the `TH` roff macro. Within that title line, there is always, at a minimum, a title, followed by a section value (representing a man "section" -- usually just a number).

The title and section are displayed, together, in the visible header of each page. Where in the header they are displayed depends on OS the man page is viewed on, and on what version of nroff/groff/man is used for viewing the page. But, at a minimum and across all systems, the title and section are displayed on the right-hand column of the header. On many systems -- those with a modern groff, including Linux systems -- they are displayed twice: both in the left and right columns of the header.

So if the length of the title exceeds a certain percentage of the column width in which the page is viewed, the left and right titles can end up overlapping, making them unreadable, or breaking to another line, which doesn't look particularly good.

So the stylesheets provide the *`man.th.title.max.length`* parameter as a means for truncating titles that exceed the maximum length that can be viewing properly in a page header.

The default value is reasonable but somewhat arbitrary. If you have pages with long titles, you may want to experiment with changing the value in order to achieve the correct aesthetic results.

Name

man.th.extra2.max.length — Maximum length of extra2 in header/footer

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.th.extra2.max.length">30</xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the maximum permitted length of the `extra2` part of the man-page part of the `.TH` title line header/footer. If the `extra2` content exceeds the maxiumum specified, it is truncated down to the maximum permitted length.

The content of the `extra2` field is usually displayed in the left footer of the page and is typically "source" data indicating the software system or product that the item documented in the man page belongs to, often in the form *`Name Version`*; for example, "GTK+ 1.2" (from the `gtk-options(7)` man page).

The default value for this parameter is reasonable but somewhat arbitrary. If you are processing pages with long "source" information, you may want to experiment with changing the value in order to achieve the correct aesthetic results.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

man.th.extra3.max.length — Maximum length of extra3 in header/footer

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.th.extra3.max.length">30</xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the maximum permitted length of the `extra3` part of the man-page `.TH` title line header/footer. If the `extra3` content exceeds the maxiumum specified, it is truncated down to the maximum permitted length.

The content of the `extra3` field is usually displayed in the middle header of the page and is typically a "manual name"; for example, "GTK+ User's Manual" (from the `gtk-options(7)` man page).

The default value for this parameter is reasonable but somewhat arbitrary. If you are processing pages with long "manual names" -- or especially if you are processing pages that have both long "title" parts (command/function, etc. names) *and* long manual names -- you may want to experiment with changing the value in order to achieve the correct aesthetic results.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Output

Name

man.output.manifest.enabled — Generate a manifest file?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.output.manifest.enabled" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, a list of filenames for man pages generated by the stylesheet transformation is written to the file named by the *man.output.manifest.filename* parameter.

Name

man.output.manifest.filename — Name of manifest file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.output.manifest.filename">MAN.MANIFEST</xsl:param>
```

Description

The *man.output.manifest.filename* parameter specifies the name of the file to which the manpages manifest file is written (if the value of the *man.output.manifest.enabled* parameter is non-zero).

Name

man.output.in.separate.dir — Output man-page files in separate output directory?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.output.in.separate.dir" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of `man.output.in.separate.dir` parameter is non-zero, man-page files are output in a separate directory, specified by the *man.output.base.dir* parameter; otherwise, if the value of `man.output.in.separate.dir` is zero, man-page files are not output in a separate directory.

Name

man.output.lang.in.name.enabled — Include $LANG value in man-page filename/pathname?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.output.lang.in.name.enabled" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The *man.output.lang.in.name.enabled* parameter specifies whether a `$lang` value is included in man-page filenames and pathnames.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

If the value of *man.output.lang.in.name.enabled* is non-zero, man-page files are output with the `$lang` value included in their filenames or pathnames as follows;

- if *man.output.subdirs.enabled* is non-zero, each file is output to, e.g., a `man/$lang/man8/foo.8` pathname
- if *man.output.subdirs.enabled* is zero, each file is output with a `foo.$lang.8` filename

Name

man.output.base.dir — Specifies separate output directory

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.output.base.dir">man/</xsl:param>
```

Description

The *man.output.base.dir* parameter specifies the base directory into which man-page files are output. The *man.output.subdirs.enabled* parameter controls whether the files are output in subdirectories within the base directory.

Note

The values of the *man.output.base.dir* and *man.output.subdirs.enabled* parameters are used only if the value of *man.output.in.separate.dir* parameter is non-zero. If the value of the *man.output.in.separate.dir* is zero, man-page files are not output in a separate directory.

Name

man.output.subdirs.enabled — Output man-page files in subdirectories within base output directory?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.output.subdirs.enabled" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The *man.output.subdirs.enabled* parameter controls whether man-pages files are output in subdirectories within the base directory specified by the directory specified by the *man.output.base.dir* parameter.

Note

The values of the *man.output.base.dir* and *man.output.subdirs.enabled* parameters are used only if the value of *man.output.in.separate.dir* parameter is non-zero. If the value of the *man.output.in.separate.dir* is zero, man-page files are not output in a separate directory.

Name

man.output.quietly — Suppress filename messages emitted when generating output?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.output.quietly" select="0"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

If zero (the default), for each man-page file created, a message with the name of the file is emitted. If non-zero, the files are output "quietly" -- that is, the filename messages are suppressed.

Tip

If you are processing a large amount of `refentry` content, you may be able to speed up processing significantly by setting a non-zero value for *`man.output.quietly`*.

Name

man.output.encoding — Encoding used for man-page output

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.output.encoding" select="'UTF-8'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter specifies the encoding to use for files generated by the manpages stylesheet. Not all processors support specification of this parameter.

Important

If the value of the *`man.charmap.enabled`* parameter is non-zero (the default), keeping the *`man.output.encoding`* parameter at its default value (`UTF-8`) or setting it to `UTF-16` **does not cause your man pages to be output in raw UTF-8 or UTF-16** -- because any Unicode characters for which matches are found in the enabled character map will be replaced with roff escape sequences before the final man-page files are generated.

So if you want to generate "real" UTF-8 man pages, without any character substitution being performed on your content, you need to set *`man.charmap.enabled`* to zero (which will completely disable character-map processing).

You may also need to set *`man.charmap.enabled`* to zero if you want to output man pages in an encoding other than `UTF-8` or `UTF-16`. Character-map processing is based on Unicode character values and may not work with other output encodings.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Other

Name

man.table.footnotes.divider — Specifies divider string that appears before table footnotes

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.table.footnotes.divider">----</xsl:param>
```

Description

In each table that contains footenotes, the string specified by the *man.table.footnotes.divider* parameter is output before the list of footnotes for the table.

Name

man.subheading.divider.enabled — Add divider comment to roff source before/after subheadings?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="man.subheading.divider.enabled">0</xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of the *man.subheading.divider.enabled* parameter is non-zero, the contents of the *man.subheading.divider* parameter are used to add a "divider" before and after subheadings in the roff output. **The divider is not visisble in the rendered man page**; it is added as a comment, in the source, simply for the purpose of increasing reability of the source.

If *man.subheading.divider.enabled* is zero (the default), the subheading divider is suppressed.

Name

man.subheading.divider — Specifies string to use as divider comment before/after subheadings

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param \
name="man.subheading.divider">==========================================================================</xsl:param>
```

Description

If the value of the *man.subheading.divider.enabled* parameter is non-zero, the contents of the *man.subheading.divider* parameter are used to add a "divider" before and after subheadings in the roff output. **The divider is not visisble in the rendered man page**; it is added as a comment, in the source, simply for the purpose of increasing reability of the source.

If *man.subheading.divider.enabled* is zero (the default), the subheading divider is suppressed.

Name

email.delimiters.enabled — Generate delimiters around email addresses?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="email.delimiters.enabled">1</xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, delimiters[1] are generated around e-mail addresses (the output of the `email` element).

[1]For delimiters, the stylesheets are currently hard-coded to output angle brackets.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Part IV. Roundtrip Parameter Reference

This is reference documentation for all user-configurable parameters in the DocBook “Roundtrip” Stylesheets (for transforming DocBook to WordML, OpenDocument, and Apple Pages, and for converting from those formats back to DocBook).

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Parameters

Name

wordml.template — Specify the template WordML document

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="wordml.template" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The *wordml.template* parameter specifies a WordML document to use as a template for the generated document. The template document is used to define the (extensive) headers for the generated document, in particular the paragraph and character styles that are used to format the various elements. Any content in the template document is ignored.

A template document is used in order to allow maintenance of the paragraph and character styles to be done using Word itself, rather than these XSL stylesheets.

Name

pages.template — Specify the template Pages document

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="pages.template" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The *pages.template* parameter specifies a Pages (the Apple word processing application) document to use as a template for the generated document. The template document is used to define the (extensive) headers for the generated document, in particular the paragraph and character styles that are used to format the various elements. Any content in the template document is ignored.

A template document is used in order to allow maintenance of the paragraph and character styles to be done using Pages itself, rather than these XSL stylesheets.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Part V. Slides Parameter Reference

This is reference documentation for all user-configurable parameters in the DocBook XSL Slides stylesheet (for generating slide presentations). Note that the Slides stylesheet for HTML output is a customization layer of the DocBook XSL HTML stylesheet, while the Slides stylesheet for FO output is a customization layer of the DocBook XSL FO stylesheet. Therefore, in addition to the slides-specific parameters listed in this section, you can also use a number of HTML stylesheet parameters[1] and FO stylesheet parameters[2] to control Slides output.

[1] http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/xsl/current/doc/html/index.html
[2] http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/xsl/current/doc/fo/index.html

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

FO: General Params

Name

slide.title.font.family — Specifies font family to use for slide titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="slide.title.font.family" select="'Helvetica'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the font family to use for slides titles.

Name

slide.font.family — Specifies font family to use for slide bodies

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="slide.font.family" select="'Helvetica'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the font family to use for slides bodies.

Name

foil.title.master — Specifies unitless font size to use for foil titles

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="foil.title.master" select="36"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies a unitless font size to use for foil titles; used in combination with the *`foil.title.size`* parameter.

Name

foil.title.size — Specifies font size to use for foil titles, including units

Synopsis

```
   <xsl:param name="foil.title.size">
    <xsl:value-of select="$foil.title.master"></xsl:value-of><xsl:text>pt</xsl:text>
   </xsl:param>
  \
```

Description

This parameter combines the value of the *`foil.title.master`* parameter with a unit specification. The default unit is `pt` (points).

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

FO: Property Sets

Name

slides.properties — Specifies properties for all slides

Synopsis

```
    <xsl:attribute-set name="slides.properties">
      <xsl:attribute name="font-family">
        <xsl:value-of select="$slide.font.family"></xsl:value-of>
      </xsl:attribute>
    </xsl:attribute-set>
  \
```

Description

This parameter specifies properties that are applied to all slides.

Name

foilgroup.properties — Specifies properties for all foilgroups

Synopsis

```
    <xsl:attribute-set name="foilgroup.properties">
      <xsl:attribute name="font-family">
        <xsl:value-of select="$slide.font.family"></xsl:value-of>
      </xsl:attribute>
    </xsl:attribute-set>
  \
```

Description

This parameter specifies properties that are applied to all foilgroups.

Name

foil.subtitle.properties — Specifies properties for all foil subtitles

Synopsis

```
    <xsl:attribute-set name="foil.subtitle.properties">
      <xsl:attribute name="font-family">
        <xsl:value-of select="$slide.title.font.family"></xsl:value-of>
      </xsl:attribute>
      <xsl:attribute name="text-align">center</xsl:attribute>
      <xsl:attribute name="font-size">
        <xsl:value-of select="$foil.title.master * \
0.8"></xsl:value-of><xsl:text>pt</xsl:text>
      </xsl:attribute>
      <xsl:attribute name="space-after">12pt</xsl:attribute>
    </xsl:attribute-set>
  \
```

Description

This parameter specifies properties that are applied to all foil subtitles.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

foil.properties — Specifies properties for all foils

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="foil.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-family">
    <xsl:value-of select="$slide.font.family"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="margin-left">1in</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="margin-right">1in</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">
    <xsl:value-of select="$body.font.size"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-weight">bold</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
\
```

Description

This parameter specifies properties that are applied to all foils.

Name

speakernote.properties — Specifies properties for all speakernotes

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="speakernote.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-family">Times Roman</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-style">italic</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">12pt</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-weight">normal</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
\
```

Description

This parameter specifies properties that are applied to all speakernotes.

Name

running.foot.properties — Specifies properties for running foot on each slide

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="running.foot.properties">
  <xsl:attribute name="font-family">
    <xsl:value-of select="$slide.font.family"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="font-size">14pt</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="color">#9F9F9F</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
\
```

Description

This parameter specifies properties that are applied to the running foot area of each slide.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

HTML: General Parameters

Name

keyboard.nav — Enable keyboard navigation?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="keyboard.nav" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, JavaScript is added to the slides to enable keyboard navigation. Pressing 'n', space, or return moves forward; pressing 'p' moves backward.

Name

css.stylesheet — CSS stylesheet for slides

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="css.stylesheet" select="'slides.css'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Identifies the CSS stylesheet used by all the slides. This parameter can be set in the source document with the <?dbhtml?> pseudo-attribute `css-stylesheet`.

Name

css.stylesheet.dir — Default directory for CSS stylesheets

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="css.stylesheet.dir" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Identifies the default directory for the CSS stylesheet generated on all the slides. This parameter can be set in the source document with the <?dbhtml?> pseudo-attribute `css-stylesheet-dir`.

If non-empty, this value is prepended to each of the stylesheets.

Name

titlefoil.html — Name of title foil HTML file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="titlefoil.html" select="concat('index', $html.ext)"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Sets the filename used for the slides titlepage.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

toc.html — Name of ToC HTML file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.html" select="concat('toc', $html.ext)"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Sets the filename used for the table of contents page.

Name

foilgroup.toc — Put ToC on foilgroup pages?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="foilgroup.toc" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, a ToC will be placed on foilgroup pages (after any other content).

Name

output.indent — Indent output?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="output.indent" select="'no'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the setting of the *`indent`* parameter on the HTML slides. For more information, see the discussion of the `xsl:output` element in the XSLT specification.

Name

overlay — Overlay footer navigation?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="overlay" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, JavaScript is added to the slides to make the bottom navigation appear at the bottom of each page. This option and multiframe are mutually exclusive.

If this parameter is zero, the bottom navigation simply appears below the content of each slide.

Name

show.foil.number — Show foil number on each foil?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="show.foil.number" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, on each slide there will be its number. Currently not supported in all output formats.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

HTML: Frame Parameters

Name

nav.separator — Output separator between navigation and body?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="nav.separator" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, a separator (`<HR>`) is added between the navigation links and the content of each slide.

Name

toc.row.height — Height of ToC rows in dynamic ToCs

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.row.height" select="22"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This parameter specifies the height of each row in the table of contents. This is only applicable if a dynamic ToC is used. You may want to adjust this parameter for optimal appearance with the font and image sizes selected by your CSS stylesheet.

Name

toc.bg.color — Background color for ToC frame

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.bg.color" select="'#FFFFFF'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the background color used in the ToC frame.

Name

body.bg.color — Background color for body frame

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="body.bg.color" select="'#FFFFFF'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the background color used in the body column of tabular slides.

Name

toc.width — Width of ToC frame

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.width" select="250"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the width of the ToC frame.

Name

toc.hide.show — Enable hide/show button for ToC frame

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.hide.show" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, JavaScript (and an additional icon, see hidetoc.image and showtoc.image) is added to each slide to allow the ToC panel to be “toggled” on each panel.

Note

There is a bug in Mozilla 1.0 (at least as of CR3) that causes the browser to reload the titlepage when this feature is used.

Name

dynamic.toc — Dynamic ToCs?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="dynamic.toc" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, JavaScript is used to make the ToC panel “dynamic”. In a dynamic ToC, each section in the ToC can be expanded and collapsed by clicking on the appropriate image.

Name

active.toc — Active ToCs?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="active.toc" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, JavaScript is used to keep the ToC and the current slide “in sync”. That is, each time the slide changes, the corresponding ToC entry will be underlined.

Name

overlay.logo — Logo to overlay on ToC frame

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="overlay.logo" \
select="'http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/buttons/slides-1.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If this URI is non-empty, JavaScript is used to overlay the specified image on the ToC frame.

Name

multiframe — Use multiple frames for slide bodies?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="multiframe" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, multiple frames are used for the body of each slide. This is one way of forcing the slide navigation elements to appear in constant locations. The other way is with overlays. The *overlay* and *multiframe* parameters are mutually exclusive.

Name

multiframe.top.bgcolor — Background color for top navigation frame

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="multiframe.top.bgcolor" select="'white'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the background color of the top navigation frame when multiframe is enabled.

Name

multiframe.bottom.bgcolor — Background color for bottom navigation frame

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="multiframe.bottom.bgcolor" select="'white'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the background color of the bottom navigation frame when multiframe is enabled.

Name

multiframe.navigation.height — Height of navigation frames

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="multiframe.navigation.height" select="40"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

Specifies the height of the navigation frames when multiframe is enabled.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

HTML: Graphics Parameters

Name

graphics.dir — Graphics directory

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="graphics.dir" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Identifies the graphics directory for the navigation components generated on all the slides. This parameter can be set in the source document with the <?dbhtml?> pseudo-attribute `graphics-dir`.

If non-empty, this value is prepended to each of the graphic image paths.

Name

bullet.image — Bullet image

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="bullet.image" select="'toc/bullet.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the bullet image used for foils in the framed ToC.

Name

next.image — Right-arrow image

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="next.image" select="'active/nav-next.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the right-pointing navigation arrow.

Name

prev.image — Left-arrow image

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="prev.image" select="'active/nav-prev.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the left-pointing navigation arrow.

Name

up.image — Up-arrow image

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="up.image" select="'active/nav-up.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the upward-pointing navigation arrow.

Name

home.image — Home image

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="home.image" select="'active/nav-home.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the home navigation icon.

Name

toc.image — ToC image

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.image" select="'active/nav-toc.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the ToC navigation icon.

Name

no.next.image — Inactive right-arrow image

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="no.next.image" select="'inactive/nav-next.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the inactive right-pointing navigation arrow.

Name

no.prev.image — Inactive left-arrow image

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="no.prev.image" select="'inactive/nav-prev.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the inactive left-pointing navigation arrow.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

no.up.image — Inactive up-arrow image

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="no.up.image" select="'inactive/nav-up.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the inactive upward-pointing navigation arrow.

Name

no.home.image — Inactive home image

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="no.home.image" select="'inactive/nav-home.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the inactive home navigation icon.

Name

no.toc.image — Inactive ToC image

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="no.toc.image" select="'inactive/nav-toc.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the inactive ToC navigation icon.

Name

plus.image — Plus image

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="plus.image" select="'toc/closed.png'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the “plus” image; the image used in a dynamic ToC to indicate that a section can be expanded.

Name

minus.image — Minus image

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="minus.image" select="'toc/open.png'"></xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

Specifies the filename of the “minus” image; the image used in a dynamic ToC to indicate that a section can be collapsed.

Name

hidetoc.image — Hide ToC image

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="hidetoc.image" select="'hidetoc.gif'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the “hide ToC” image. This is used when the ToC hide/show parameter is enabled.

Name

showtoc.image — Show ToC image

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="showtoc.image" select="'showtoc.gif'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the “show ToC” image. This is used when the ToC hide/show parameter is enabled.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

HTML: JavaScript Parameters

Name

script.dir — Script directory

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="script.dir" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Identifies the JavaScript source directory for the slides. This parameter can be set in the source document with the <?dbhtml?> pseudo-attribute `script-dir`.

If non-empty, this value is prepended to each of the JavaScript files.

Name

ua.js — UA JavaScript file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="ua.js" select="'ua.js'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the UA JavaScript file. It's unlikely that you will ever need to change this parameter.

Name

xbDOM.js — xbDOM JavaScript file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="xbDOM.js" select="'xbDOM.js'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the xbDOM JavaScript file. It's unlikely that you will ever need to change this parameter.

Name

xbStyle.js — xbStyle JavaScript file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="xbStyle.js" select="'xbStyle.js'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the xbStyle JavaScript file. It's unlikely that you will ever need to change this parameter.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

xbLibrary.js — xbLibrary JavaScript file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="xbLibrary.js" select="'xbLibrary.js'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the xbLibrary JavaScript file. It's unlikely that you will ever need to change this parameter.

Name

xbCollapsibleLists.js — xbCollapsibleLists JavaScript file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="xbCollapsibleLists.js" select="'xbCollapsibleLists.js'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the xbCollapsibleLists JavaScript file. It's unlikely that you will ever need to change this parameter.

Name

overlay.js — Overlay JavaScript file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="overlay.js" select="'overlay.js'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the overlay JavaScript file. It's unlikely that you will ever need to change this parameter.

Name

slides.js — Slides overlay file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="slides.js" select="'slides.js'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

Specifies the filename of the slides JavaScript file. It's unlikely that you will ever need to change this parameter.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

HTML: Localization Parameters

Name

text.home — Home

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="text.home" select="'Home'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

text.toc — FIXME:

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="text.toc" select="'ToC'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

text.prev — FIXME:

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="text.prev" select="'Prev'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

text.up — FIXME:

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="text.up" select="'Up'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

Name

text.next — FIXME:

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="text.next" select="'Next'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Part VI. Website Parameter Reference

This is reference documentation for all user-configurable parameters in the DocBook XSL Website stylesheet (for generating websites from DocBook XML sources). Note that the Website stylesheet is a customization layer of the DocBook XSL HTML stylesheet. Therefore, in addition to the Website-specific parameters listed in this section, you can also use a number of HTML stylesheet parameters[1] to control Website output.

[1] http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/xsl/current/doc/html/index.html

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Parameters

Name

header.hr — Toggle <HR> after header

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="header.hr" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, an <HR> is generated at the bottom of each web page, before the footer.

Name

footer.hr — Toggle <HR> before footer

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="footer.hr" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, an <HR> is generated at the bottom of each web page, before the footer.

Name

feedback.href — HREF (URI) for feedback link

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="feedback.href"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The `feedback.href` value is used as the value for the `href` attribute on the feedback link. If `feedback.href` is empty, no feedback link is generated.

Name

feedback.with.ids — Toggle use of IDs in feedback

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="feedback.with.ids" select="0"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If `feedback.with.ids` is non-zero, the ID of the current page will be added to the feedback link. This can be used, for example, if the `feedback.href` is a CGI script.

Name

feedback.link.text — The text of the feedback link

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="feedback.link.text">Feedback</xsl:param>
```

Description

The contents of this variable is used as the text of the feedback link if `feedback.href` is not empty. If `feedback.href` is empty, no feedback link is generated.

Name

filename-prefix — Prefix added to all filenames

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="filename-prefix" select="''"></xsl:param>
```

Description

To produce the “text-only” (that is, non-tabular) layout of a website simultaneously with the tabular layout, the filenames have to be distinguished. That's accomplished by adding the `filename-prefix` to the front of each filename.

Name

autolayout-file — Identifies the autolayout.xml file

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="autolayout-file" select="'autolayout.xml'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

When the source pages are spread over several directories, this parameter can be set (for example, from the command line of a batch-mode XSLT processor) to indicate the location of the autolayout.xml file.

FIXME: for browser-based use, there needs to be a PI for this...

Name

output-root — Specifies the root directory of the website

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="output-root" select="'.'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

When using the XSLT processor to manage dependencies and construct the website, this parameter can be used to indicate the root directory where the resulting pages are placed.

Only applies when XSLT-based chunking is being used.

Name

dry-run — Indicates that no files should be produced

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="dry-run" select="'0'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

When using the XSLT processor to manage dependencies and construct the website, this parameter can be used to suppress the generation of new and updated files. Effectively, this allows you to see what the stylesheet would do, without actually making any changes.

Only applies when XSLT-based chunking is being used.

Name

rebuild-all — Indicates that all files should be produced

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="rebuild-all" select="'0'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

When using the XSLT processor to manage dependencies and construct the website, this parameter can be used to regenerate the whole website, updating even pages that don't appear to need to be updated.

The dependency extension only looks at the source documents. So if you change something in the stylesheet, for example, that has a global effect, you can use this parameter to force the stylesheet to rebuild the whole website.

Only applies when XSLT-based chunking is being used.

Name

nav.table.summary — HTML Table summary attribute value for navigation tables

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="nav.table.summary">Navigation</xsl:param>
```

Description

The value of this parameter is used as the value of the table summary attribute for the navigation table.

Only applies with the tabular presentation is being used.

Name

navtocwidth — Specifies the width of the navigation table TOC

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="navtocwidth">220</xsl:param>
```

Description

The width, in pixels, of the navigation column.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Only applies with the tabular presentation is being used.

Name

navbodywidth — Specifies the width of the navigation table body

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="navbodywidth"></xsl:param>
```

Description

The width of the body column.

Only applies with the tabular presentation is being used.

Name

textbgcolor — The background color of the table body

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="textbgcolor">white</xsl:param>
```

Description

The background color of the table body.

Only applies with the tabular presentation is being used.

Name

navbgcolor — The background color of the navigation TOC

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="navbgcolor">#4080FF</xsl:param>
```

Description

The background color of the navigation TOC.

Only applies with the tabular presentation is being used.

Name

toc.spacer.graphic — Use graphic for TOC spacer?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.spacer.graphic" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, the indentation in the TOC will be accomplished with the graphic identified by `toc.spacer.image`.

Only applies with the tabular presentation is being used.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

toc.spacer.text — The text for spacing the TOC

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.spacer.text">   </xsl:param>
```

Description

If `toc.spacer.graphic` is zero, this text string will be used to indent the TOC.

Only applies with the tabular presentation is being used.

Name

toc.spacer.image — The image for spacing the TOC

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.spacer.image">graphics/blank.gif</xsl:param>
```

Description

If `toc.spacer.graphic` is non-zero, this image will be used to indent the TOC.

Only applies with the tabular presentation is being used.

Name

toc.pointer.graphic — Use graphic for TOC pointer?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.pointer.graphic" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, the "pointer" in the TOC will be displayed with the graphic identified by `toc.pointer.image`.

Only applies with the tabular presentation is being used.

Name

toc.pointer.text — The text for the "pointer" in the TOC

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.pointer.text"> > </xsl:param>
```

Description

If `toc.pointer.graphic` is zero, this text string will be used to display the "pointer" in the TOC.

Only applies with the tabular presentation is being used.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

toc.pointer.image — The image for the "pointer" in the TOC

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.pointer.image">graphics/arrow.gif</xsl:param>
```

Description

If `toc.pointer.graphic` is non-zero, this image will be used for the "pointer" in the TOC.

Only applies with the tabular presentation is being used.

Name

toc.blank.graphic — Use graphic for "blanks" in TOC?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.blank.graphic" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

If non-zero, "blanks" in the the TOC will be accomplished with the graphic identified by `toc.spacer.image`.

Only applies with the tabular presentation is being used.

Name

toc.blank.text — The text for "blanks" in the TOC

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.blank.text">   </xsl:param>
```

Description

If `toc.blank.graphic` is zero, this text string will be used for "blanks" in the TOC.

Only applies with the tabular presentation is being used.

Name

toc.blank.image — The image for "blanks" in the TOC

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="toc.blank.image">graphics/blank.gif</xsl:param>
```

Description

If `toc.blank.graphic` is non-zero, this image will be used to for "blanks" in the TOC.

Only applies with the tabular presentation is being used.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

suppress.homepage.title — Suppress title on homepage?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="suppress.homepage.title" select="'1'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME:If non-zero, the title on the homepage is suppressed?

Name

body.attributes — DEPRECATED

Synopsis

```
<xsl:attribute-set name="body.attributes">
  <xsl:attribute name="bgcolor">white</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="text">black</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="link">#0000FF</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="vlink">#840084</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="alink">#0000FF</xsl:attribute>
</xsl:attribute-set>
```

Description

DEPRECATED

Name

sequential.links — Make sequentional links?

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="sequential.links" select="'0'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME

Name

currentpage.marker — The text symbol used to mark the current page

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="currentpage.marker" select="'@'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME

Name

banner.before.navigation — Put banner before navigation?

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="banner.before.navigation" select="1"></xsl:param>
```

Description

FIXME

Name

table.spacer.image — Invisible pixel for tabular accessibility

Synopsis

```
<xsl:param name="table.spacer.image" select="'graphics/spacer.gif'"></xsl:param>
```

Description

This is the 1x1 pixel, transparent pixel used for the table trick[1] to increase the accessibility of the tabular website presentation.

[1] http://diveintoaccessibility.org/day_10_presenting_your_main_content_first.html

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Part VII. Processing Instruction Reference

This is technical reference documentation for the DocBook XSL Stylesheets. It documents processing instructions (PIs) recognized by the stylesheets.

These PIs can be usually used to change behaviour of stylesheets in a particular place. If you want to change some setting globally it is better to do it via setting appropriate stylesheet parameter if there is such one.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

HTML PIs

Following PIs are processed only if you are generating HTML output. This means that you are using HTML, XHTML, HTML Help or JavaHelp output format.

Name of this PI is `dbhtml` and its behaviour is controlled with following “attributes”.

Name

filename — Filename for chunk

Description

Sets the name for chunked file. PI must be child of element which goes into chunk (e.g. chapter, section). You can also set directory for chunk.

Another way to control filename of chunk is enabling *`use.id.as.filename`* parameter.

Example

```
<section>
<title>Configuring pencil</title>
<?dbhtml filename="configuration.html"?>

...

</section>
```

Name

dir — Directory for chunk

Description

Sets the directory for chunked file. PI must be child of element which goes into chunk (e.g. chapter, section). Resulting directory is inherited from ancestor elements if they also contain this PI. You can also set filename for chunk.

PI can specify both filename and directory at the same time.

Example

```
<section>
<title>Configuring pencil</title>
<?dbhtml dir="config" filename="pencil.html"?>

...

</section>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Common PIs

Following PIs are recognized in all output formats.

Name

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Part VIII. XSL Library Template Reference

Introduction

This is technical reference documentation for the DocBook XSL Stylesheets; it documents (some of) the parameters, templates, and other elements of the stylesheets.

This is not intended to be “user” documentation. It is provided for developers writing customization layers for the stylesheets, and for anyone who's interested in “how it works”.

Although I am trying to be thorough, this documentation is known to be incomplete. Don't forget to read the source, too :-)

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

General Library Templates

Name

dot.count — Returns the number of “.” characters in a string

Description

```
<xsl:template name="dot.count">
  <!-- Returns the number of "." characters in a string -->
  <xsl:param name="string"></xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="count" select="0"></xsl:param>
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="contains($string, '.')">
      <xsl:call-template name="dot.count">
        <xsl:with-param name="string" select="substring-after($string, \
'.')"></xsl:with-param>
        <xsl:with-param name="count" select="$count+1"></xsl:with-param>
      </xsl:call-template>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <xsl:value-of select="$count"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>
```

Name

copy-string — Returns “count” copies of a string

Description

```
<xsl:template name="copy-string">
  <!-- returns 'count' copies of 'string' -->
  <xsl:param name="string"></xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="count" select="0"></xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="result"></xsl:param>

  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$count>0">
      <xsl:call-template name="copy-string">
        <xsl:with-param name="string" select="$string"></xsl:with-param>
        <xsl:with-param name="count" select="$count - 1"></xsl:with-param>
        <xsl:with-param name="result">
          <xsl:value-of select="$result"></xsl:value-of>
          <xsl:value-of select="$string"></xsl:value-of>
        </xsl:with-param>
      </xsl:call-template>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <xsl:value-of select="$result"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>
```

Name

string.subst — Substitute one text string for another in a string

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Description

The `string.subst` template replaces all occurances of *`target`* in *`string`* with *`replacement`* and returns the result.

```
<xsl:template name="string.subst">
  <xsl:param name="string"></xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="target"></xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="replacement"></xsl:param>

  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="contains($string, $target)">
      <xsl:variable name="rest">
        <xsl:call-template name="string.subst">
          <xsl:with-param name="string" select="substring-after($string, \
$target)"></xsl:with-param>
          <xsl:with-param name="target" select="$target"></xsl:with-param>
          <xsl:with-param name="replacement" select="$replacement"></xsl:with-param>
        </xsl:call-template>
      </xsl:variable>
      <xsl:value-of select="concat(substring-before($string, $target),             \
                      $replacement,                                    \
$rest)"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <xsl:value-of select="$string"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>
```

Name

xpointer.idref — Extract IDREF from an XPointer

Description

The `xpointer.idref` template returns the ID portion of an XPointer which is a pointer to an ID within the current document, or the empty string if it is not.

In other words, `xpointer.idref` returns “foo” when passed either `#foo` or `#xpointer(id('foo'))`, otherwise it returns the empty string.

```
<xsl:template name="xpointer.idref">
  <xsl:param name="xpointer">http://...</xsl:param>
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="starts-with($xpointer, '#xpointer(id(')">
      <xsl:variable name="rest" select="substring-after($xpointer, \
'#xpointer(id(')"></xsl:variable>
      <xsl:variable name="quote" select="substring($rest, 1, 1)"></xsl:variable>
      <xsl:value-of select="substring-before(substring-after($xpointer, $quote), \
$quote)"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="starts-with($xpointer, '#')">
      <xsl:value-of select="substring-after($xpointer, '#')"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:when>
    <!-- otherwise it's a pointer to some other document -->
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

length-magnitude — Return the unqualified dimension from a length specification

Description

The `length-magnitude` template returns the unqualified length ("20" for "20pt") from a dimension.

```
<xsl:template name="length-magnitude">
  <xsl:param name="length" select="'0pt'"></xsl:param>

  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="string-length($length) = 0"></xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="substring($length,1,1) = '0'                     or \
substring($length,1,1) = '1'                     or substring($length,1,1) = '2'    \
                 or substring($length,1,1) = '3'                     or \
substring($length,1,1) = '4'                     or substring($length,1,1) = '5'    \
                 or substring($length,1,1) = '6'                     or \
substring($length,1,1) = '7'                     or substring($length,1,1) = '8'    \
                 or substring($length,1,1) = '9'                     or \
substring($length,1,1) = '.'">
      <xsl:value-of select="substring($length,1,1)"></xsl:value-of>
      <xsl:call-template name="length-magnitude">
       <xsl:with-param name="length" select="substring($length,2)"></xsl:with-param>
      </xsl:call-template>
    </xsl:when>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>
```

Name

length-units — Return the units from a length specification

Description

The `length-units` template returns the units ("pt" for "20pt") from a length. If no units are supplied on the length, the *`defauilt.units`* are returned.

```
<xsl:template name="length-units">
  <xsl:param name="length" select="'0pt'"></xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="default.units" select="'px'"></xsl:param>
  <xsl:variable name="magnitude">
    <xsl:call-template name="length-magnitude">
      <xsl:with-param name="length" select="$length"></xsl:with-param>
    </xsl:call-template>
  </xsl:variable>

  <xsl:variable name="units">
    <xsl:value-of select="substring($length, \
string-length($magnitude)+1)"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:variable>

  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$units = ''">
      <xsl:value-of select="$default.units"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <xsl:value-of select="$units"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

length-spec — Return a fully qualified length specification

Description

The `length-spec` template returns the qualified length from a dimension. If an unqualified length is given, the *`default.units`* will be added to it.

```
<xsl:template name="length-spec">
  <xsl:param name="length" select="'0pt'"></xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="default.units" select="'px'"></xsl:param>

  <xsl:variable name="magnitude">
    <xsl:call-template name="length-magnitude">
      <xsl:with-param name="length" select="$length"></xsl:with-param>
    </xsl:call-template>
  </xsl:variable>

  <xsl:variable name="units">
    <xsl:value-of select="substring($length, \
string-length($magnitude)+1)"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:variable>

  <xsl:value-of select="$magnitude"></xsl:value-of>
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$units='cm'                     or $units='mm'                  \
   or $units='in'                   or $units='pt'                   or $units='pc' \
                    or $units='px'                     or $units='em'">
      <xsl:value-of select="$units"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$units = ''">
      <xsl:value-of select="$default.units"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <xsl:message>
        <xsl:text>Unrecognized unit of measure: </xsl:text>
        <xsl:value-of select="$units"></xsl:value-of>
        <xsl:text>.</xsl:text>
      </xsl:message>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>
```

Name

length-in-points — Returns the size, in points, of a specified length

Description

The `length-in-points` template converts a length specification to points and returns that value as an unqualified number.

Caution

There is no way for the template to infer the size of an `em`. It relies on the default *`em.size`* which is initially `10` (for 10pt).

Similarly, converting pixels to points relies on the *`pixels.per.inch`* parameter which is initially `90`.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
<xsl:template name="length-in-points">
  <xsl:param name="length" select="'0pt'"></xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="em.size" select="10"></xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="pixels.per.inch" select="90"></xsl:param>

  <xsl:variable name="magnitude">
    <xsl:call-template name="length-magnitude">
      <xsl:with-param name="length" select="$length"></xsl:with-param>
    </xsl:call-template>
  </xsl:variable>

  <xsl:variable name="units">
    <xsl:value-of select="substring($length, \
string-length($magnitude)+1)"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:variable>

  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$units = 'pt'">
      <xsl:value-of select="$magnitude"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$units = 'cm'">
      <xsl:value-of select="$magnitude div 2.54 * 72.0"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$units = 'mm'">
      <xsl:value-of select="$magnitude div 25.4 * 72.0"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$units = 'in'">
      <xsl:value-of select="$magnitude * 72.0"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$units = 'pc'">
      <xsl:value-of select="$magnitude * 12.0"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$units = 'px'">
      <xsl:value-of select="$magnitude div $pixels.per.inch * 72.0"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:when test="$units = 'em'">
      <xsl:value-of select="$magnitude * $em.size"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <xsl:message>
        <xsl:text>Unrecognized unit of measure: </xsl:text>
        <xsl:value-of select="$units"></xsl:value-of>
        <xsl:text>.</xsl:text>
      </xsl:message>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>
```

Name

pi-attribute — Extract a pseudo-attribute from a PI

Description

The `pi-attribute` template extracts a pseudo-attribute from a processing instruction. For example, given the PI “`<?foo bar="1" baz='red'?>`”,

```
<xsl:call-template name="pi-attribute">
  <xsl:with-param name="pis" select="processing-instruction('foo')"/>
  <xsl:with-param name="attribute" select="'baz'"/>
</xsl:call-template>
```

will return “red”. This template returns the first matching attribute that it finds. Presented with processing instructions that contain badly formed pseudo-attributes (missing or unbalanced quotes, for example), the template may silently return erroneous results.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
<xsl:template name="pi-attribute">
  <xsl:param name="pis" select="processing-instruction('BOGUS_PI')"></xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="attribute">filename</xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="count">1</xsl:param>

  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$count>count($pis)">
      <!-- not found -->
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <xsl:variable name="pi">
        <xsl:value-of select="$pis[$count]"></xsl:value-of>
      </xsl:variable>
      <xsl:variable name="pivalue">
        <xsl:value-of select="concat(' ', normalize-space($pi))"></xsl:value-of>
      </xsl:variable>
      <xsl:choose>
        <xsl:when test="contains($pivalue,concat(' ', $attribute, '='))">
          <xsl:variable name="rest" select="substring-after($pivalue,concat(' ', \
$attribute,'='))"></xsl:variable>
          <xsl:variable name="quote" select="substring($rest,1,1)"></xsl:variable>
          <xsl:value-of \
select="substring-before(substring($rest,2),$quote)"></xsl:value-of>
        </xsl:when>
        <xsl:otherwise>
          <xsl:call-template name="pi-attribute">
            <xsl:with-param name="pis" select="$pis"></xsl:with-param>
            <xsl:with-param name="attribute" select="$attribute"></xsl:with-param>
            <xsl:with-param name="count" select="$count + 1"></xsl:with-param>
          </xsl:call-template>
        </xsl:otherwise>
      </xsl:choose>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>
```

Name

lookup.key — Retrieve the value associated with a particular key in a table

Description

Given a table of space-delimited key/value pairs, the `lookup.key` template extracts the value associated with a particular key.

```
<xsl:template name="lookup.key">
  <xsl:param name="key" select="''"></xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="table" select="''"></xsl:param>

  <xsl:if test="contains($table, ' ')">
    <xsl:choose>
      <xsl:when test="substring-before($table, ' ') = $key">
       <xsl:variable name="rest" select="substring-after($table, ' ')"></xsl:variable>
        <xsl:choose>
          <xsl:when test="contains($rest, ' ')">
            <xsl:value-of select="substring-before($rest, ' ')"></xsl:value-of>
          </xsl:when>
          <xsl:otherwise>
            <xsl:value-of select="$rest"></xsl:value-of>
          </xsl:otherwise>
        </xsl:choose>
      </xsl:when>
      <xsl:otherwise>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
        <xsl:call-template name="lookup.key">
          <xsl:with-param name="key" select="$key"></xsl:with-param>
         <xsl:with-param name="table" select="substring-after(substring-after($table,' \
'), ' ')"></xsl:with-param>
        </xsl:call-template>
      </xsl:otherwise>
    </xsl:choose>
  </xsl:if>
</xsl:template>
```

Name

xpath.location — Calculate the XPath child-sequence to the current node

Description

The `xpath.location` template calculates the absolute path from the root of the tree to the current element node.

```
<xsl:template name="xpath.location">
  <xsl:param name="node" select="."></xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="path" select="''"></xsl:param>

  <xsl:variable name="next.path">
    <xsl:value-of select="local-name($node)"></xsl:value-of>
    <xsl:if test="$path != ''">/</xsl:if>
    <xsl:value-of select="$path"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:variable>

  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$node/parent::*">
      <xsl:call-template name="xpath.location">
        <xsl:with-param name="node" select="$node/parent::*"></xsl:with-param>
        <xsl:with-param name="path" select="$next.path"></xsl:with-param>
      </xsl:call-template>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <xsl:text>/</xsl:text>
      <xsl:value-of select="$next.path"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>
```

Name

comment-escape-string — Prepare a string for inclusion in an XML comment

Description

The `comment-escape-string` template returns a string that has been transformed so that it can safely be output as an XML comment. Internal occurrences of "--" will be replaced with "- -" and a leading and/or trailing space will be added to the string, if necessary.

```
<xsl:template name="comment-escape-string">
  <xsl:param name="string" select="''"></xsl:param>

  <xsl:if test="starts-with($string, '-')">
    <xsl:text> </xsl:text>
  </xsl:if>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
  <xsl:call-template name="comment-escape-string.recursive">
    <xsl:with-param name="string" select="$string"></xsl:with-param>
  </xsl:call-template>

  <xsl:if test="substring($string, string-length($string), 1) = '-'">
    <xsl:text> </xsl:text>
  </xsl:if>
</xsl:template>
```

Name

comment-escape-string.recursive — Internal function used by comment-escape-string

Description

The `comment-escape-string.recursive` template is used by `comment-escape-string`.

```
<xsl:template name="comment-escape-string.recursive">
  <xsl:param name="string" select="''"></xsl:param>
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="contains($string, '--')">
      <xsl:value-of select="substring-before($string, '--')"></xsl:value-of>
      <xsl:value-of select="'- -'"></xsl:value-of>
      <xsl:call-template name="comment-escape-string.recursive">
        <xsl:with-param name="string" select="substring-after($string, \
'--')"></xsl:with-param>
      </xsl:call-template>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <xsl:value-of select="$string"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>
```

Name

prepend-pad — Right-pad a string out to a certain length

Description

This function takes string *`padVar`* and pads it out to the string-length *`length`*, using string *`padChar`* (a space character by default) as the padding string (note that *`padChar`* can be a string; it is not limited to just being a single character).

Note

This function is a copy of Nate Austin's `prepend-pad` function in the Padding Content[1] section of Dave Pawson's XSLT FAQ[2].

```
  <xsl:template name="prepend-pad">
  <!-- recursive template to right justify and prepend-->
  <!-- the value with whatever padChar is passed in   -->
    <xsl:param name="padChar" select="' '"></xsl:param>
    <xsl:param name="padVar"></xsl:param>
    <xsl:param name="length"></xsl:param>
```

[1] http://www.dpawson.co.uk/xsl/sect2/padding.html
[2] http://www.dpawson.co.uk/xsl/index.html

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
    <xsl:choose>
      <xsl:when test="string-length($padVar) < $length">
        <xsl:call-template name="prepend-pad">
          <xsl:with-param name="padChar" select="$padChar"></xsl:with-param>
          <xsl:with-param name="padVar" \
select="concat($padChar,$padVar)"></xsl:with-param>
          <xsl:with-param name="length" select="$length"></xsl:with-param>
        </xsl:call-template>
      </xsl:when>
      <xsl:otherwise>
        <xsl:value-of select="substring($padVar,string-length($padVar) - $length + \
1)"></xsl:value-of>
      </xsl:otherwise>
    </xsl:choose>
  </xsl:template>
```

Name

trim.text — Trim leading and trailing whitespace from a text node

Description

Given a text node, this function trims leading and trailing whitespace from it and returns the trimmed contents.

```
  <xsl:template name="trim.text">
    <xsl:param name="contents" select="."></xsl:param>
    <xsl:variable name="contents-left-trimmed">
      <xsl:call-template name="trim-left">
        <xsl:with-param name="contents" select="$contents"></xsl:with-param>
      </xsl:call-template>
    </xsl:variable>
    <xsl:variable name="contents-trimmed">
      <xsl:call-template name="trim-right">
        <xsl:with-param name="contents" \
select="$contents-left-trimmed"></xsl:with-param>
      </xsl:call-template>
    </xsl:variable>
    <xsl:value-of select="$contents-trimmed"></xsl:value-of>
  </xsl:template>

  <xsl:template name="trim-left">
    <xsl:param name="contents"></xsl:param>
    <xsl:choose>
      <xsl:when test="starts-with($contents,'
') or                       starts-with($contents,'
') or                       starts-with($contents,' ') or                       \
starts-with($contents,' ')">
        <xsl:call-template name="trim-left">
          <xsl:with-param name="contents" select="substring($contents, \
2)"></xsl:with-param>
        </xsl:call-template>
      </xsl:when>
      <xsl:otherwise>
        <xsl:value-of select="$contents"></xsl:value-of>
      </xsl:otherwise>
    </xsl:choose>
  </xsl:template>

  <xsl:template name="trim-right">
    <xsl:param name="contents"></xsl:param>
    <xsl:variable name="last-char">
      <xsl:value-of select="substring($contents, string-length($contents), \
1)"></xsl:value-of>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
    </xsl:variable>
    <xsl:choose>
      <xsl:when test="($last-char = '
') or                        ($last-char = '
') or                        ($last-char = ' ') or                        ($last-char \
= ' ')">
        <xsl:call-template name="trim-right">
          <xsl:with-param name="contents" select="substring($contents, 1, \
string-length($contents) - 1)"></xsl:with-param>
        </xsl:call-template>
      </xsl:when>
      <xsl:otherwise>
        <xsl:value-of select="$contents"></xsl:value-of>
      </xsl:otherwise>
    </xsl:choose>
  </xsl:template>
```

Name

str.tokenize.keep.delimiters — Tokenize a string while preserving any delimiters

Description

Based on the occurrence of one or more delimiter characters, this function breaks a string into a list of tokens and delimiters, marking up each of the tokens with a `token` element and preserving the delimiters as text nodes between the tokens.

Note

This function is a very slightly modified version of a function from the EXSLT site[1]. The original is available at:

http://www.exslt.org/str/functions/tokenize/str.tokenize.template.xsl

The `str.tokenize.keep.delimiters` function differs only in that it preserves the delimiters instead of discarding them.

```
  <xsl:template name="str.tokenize.keep.delimiters">
    <xsl:param name="string" select="''"></xsl:param>
    <xsl:param name="delimiters" select="' '"></xsl:param>
    <xsl:choose>
      <xsl:when test="not($string)"></xsl:when>
      <xsl:when test="not($delimiters)">
 <xsl:call-template name="str.tokenize.keep.delimiters-characters">
   <xsl:with-param name="string" select="$string"></xsl:with-param>
 </xsl:call-template>
      </xsl:when>
      <xsl:otherwise>
 <xsl:call-template name="str.tokenize.keep.delimiters-delimiters">
   <xsl:with-param name="string" select="$string"></xsl:with-param>
   <xsl:with-param name="delimiters" select="$delimiters"></xsl:with-param>
 </xsl:call-template>
      </xsl:otherwise>
    </xsl:choose>
  </xsl:template>

  <xsl:template name="str.tokenize.keep.delimiters-characters">
    <xsl:param name="string"></xsl:param>
    <xsl:if test="$string">
      <token><xsl:value-of select="substring($string, 1, 1)"></xsl:value-of></token>
```

[1] http://www.exslt.org/

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
      <xsl:call-template name="str.tokenize.keep.delimiters-characters">
 <xsl:with-param name="string" select="substring($string, 2)"></xsl:with-param>
      </xsl:call-template>
    </xsl:if>
  </xsl:template>

  <xsl:template name="str.tokenize.keep.delimiters-delimiters">
    <xsl:param name="string"></xsl:param>
    <xsl:param name="delimiters"></xsl:param>
   <xsl:variable name="delimiter" select="substring($delimiters, 1, 1)"></xsl:variable>
    <xsl:choose>
      <xsl:when test="not($delimiter)">
 <token><xsl:value-of select="$string"></xsl:value-of></token>
      </xsl:when>
      <xsl:when test="contains($string, $delimiter)">
 <xsl:if test="not(starts-with($string, $delimiter))">
   <xsl:call-template name="str.tokenize.keep.delimiters-delimiters">
     <xsl:with-param name="string" select="substring-before($string, \
$delimiter)"></xsl:with-param>
     <xsl:with-param name="delimiters" select="substring($delimiters, \
2)"></xsl:with-param>
   </xsl:call-template>
 </xsl:if>
 <!-- output each delimiter -->
 <xsl:value-of select="$delimiter"></xsl:value-of>
 <xsl:call-template name="str.tokenize.keep.delimiters-delimiters">
   <xsl:with-param name="string" select="substring-after($string, \
$delimiter)"></xsl:with-param>
   <xsl:with-param name="delimiters" select="$delimiters"></xsl:with-param>
 </xsl:call-template>
      </xsl:when>
      <xsl:otherwise>
 <xsl:call-template name="str.tokenize.keep.delimiters-delimiters">
   <xsl:with-param name="string" select="$string"></xsl:with-param>
   <xsl:with-param name="delimiters" select="substring($delimiters, \
2)"></xsl:with-param>
 </xsl:call-template>
      </xsl:otherwise>
    </xsl:choose>
  </xsl:template>
```

Name

apply-string-subst-map — Apply a string-substitution map

Description

This function applies a "string substitution" map. Use it when you want to do multiple string substitutions on the same target content. It reads in two things: *`content`*, the content on which to perform the substitution, and *`map.contents`*, a node set of elements (the names of the elements don't matter), with each element having the following attributes:

- `oldstring`, a string to be replaced
- `newstring`, a string with which to replace `oldstring`

The function uses *`map.contents`* to do substitution on *`content`*, and then returns the modified contents.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Note

This function is a very slightly modified version of Jeni Tennison's `replace_strings` function in the multiple string replacements[1] section of Dave Pawson's XSLT FAQ[2].

The `apply-string-subst-map` function is essentially the same function as the `apply-character-map` function; the only difference is that in the map that `apply-string-subst-map` expects, `oldstring` and `newstring` attributes are used instead of `character` and `string` attributes.

```
    <xsl:template name="apply-string-subst-map">
      <xsl:param name="content"></xsl:param>
      <xsl:param name="map.contents"></xsl:param>
      <xsl:variable name="replaced_text">
        <xsl:call-template name="string.subst">
          <xsl:with-param name="string" select="$content"></xsl:with-param>
          <xsl:with-param name="target" \
select="$map.contents[1]/@oldstring"></xsl:with-param>
          <xsl:with-param name="replacement" \
select="$map.contents[1]/@newstring"></xsl:with-param>
        </xsl:call-template>
      </xsl:variable>
      <xsl:choose>
        <xsl:when test="$map.contents[2]">
          <xsl:call-template name="apply-string-subst-map">
            <xsl:with-param name="content" select="$replaced_text"></xsl:with-param>
            <xsl:with-param name="map.contents" select="$map.contents[position() > \
1]"></xsl:with-param>
          </xsl:call-template>
        </xsl:when>
        <xsl:otherwise>
          <xsl:value-of select="$replaced_text"></xsl:value-of>
        </xsl:otherwise>
      </xsl:choose>
    </xsl:template>

  \
```

Name

apply-character-map — Apply an XSLT character map

Description

This function applies an XSLT character map[1]; that is, it cause certain individual characters to be substituted with strings of one or more characters. It is useful mainly for replacing multiple "special" chararacters or symbols in the same target content. It reads in two things: *`content`*, the content on which to perform the substitution, and *`map.contents`*, a node set of elements (the names of the elements don't matter), with each element having the following attributes:

- `character`, a character to be replaced
- `string`, a string with which to replace `character`

This function uses *`map.contents`* to do substitution on *`content`*, and then returns the modified contents.

[1] http://www.dpawson.co.uk/xsl/sect2/StringReplace.html#d9351e13
[2] http://www.dpawson.co.uk/xsl/index.html
[1] http://www.w3.org/TR/xslt20/#character-maps

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Note

This function is a very slightly modified version of Jeni Tennison's `replace_strings` function in the multiple string replacements[2] section of Dave Pawson's XSLT FAQ[3].

The `apply-string-subst-map` function is essentially the same function as the `apply-character-map` function; the only difference is that in the map that `apply-string-subst-map` expects, `oldstring` and `newstring` attributes are used instead of `character` and `string` attributes.

```
    <xsl:template name="apply-character-map">
      <xsl:param name="content"></xsl:param>
      <xsl:param name="map.contents"></xsl:param>
      <xsl:variable name="replaced_text">
        <xsl:call-template name="string.subst">
          <xsl:with-param name="string" select="$content"></xsl:with-param>
          <xsl:with-param name="target" \
select="$map.contents[1]/@character"></xsl:with-param>
          <xsl:with-param name="replacement" \
select="$map.contents[1]/@string"></xsl:with-param>
        </xsl:call-template>
      </xsl:variable>
      <xsl:choose>
        <xsl:when test="$map.contents[2]">
          <xsl:call-template name="apply-character-map">
            <xsl:with-param name="content" select="$replaced_text"></xsl:with-param>
            <xsl:with-param name="map.contents" select="$map.contents[position() > \
1]"></xsl:with-param>
          </xsl:call-template>
        </xsl:when>
        <xsl:otherwise>
          <xsl:value-of select="$replaced_text"></xsl:value-of>
        </xsl:otherwise>
      </xsl:choose>
    </xsl:template>

  \
```

Name

read-character-map — Read in all or part of an XSLT character map

Description

The XSLT 2.0 specification describes character maps[1] and explains how they may be used to allow a specific character appearing in a text or attribute node in a final results tree to be substituted by a specified string of characters during serialization. The `read-character-map` function provides a means for reading and using character maps with XSLT 1.0-based tools.

It reads the character-map contents from *`uri`* (in full or in part, depending on the value of the *`use.subset`* parameter), then passes those contents to the `apply-character-map` function, along with *`content`*, the data on which to perform the character substition.

Using the character map "in part" means that it uses only those `output-character` elements that match the XPATH expression given in the value of the *`subset.profile`* parameter. The current implementation of that capability here relies on the `evaluate` extension XSLT function.

[2] http://www.dpawson.co.uk/xsl/sect2/StringReplace.html#d9351e13
[3] http://www.dpawson.co.uk/xsl/index.html
[1] http://www.w3.org/TR/xslt20/#character-maps

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
  <xsl:template name="read-character-map">
    <xsl:param name="use.subset"></xsl:param>
    <xsl:param name="subset.profile"></xsl:param>
    <xsl:param name="uri"></xsl:param>
    <xsl:choose>
      <xsl:when test="$use.subset != 0">
        <!-- use a subset of the character map instead of the full map -->
        <xsl:choose>
          <!-- xsltproc and Xalan both support dyn:evaluate() -->
          <xsl:when test="function-available('dyn:evaluate')">
           <xsl:copy-of select="document($uri)//*[local-name()='output-character'] \
                                [dyn:evaluate($subset.profile)]"></xsl:copy-of>
          </xsl:when>
          <!-- Saxon has its own evaluate() & doesn't support dyn:evaluate() -->
          <xsl:when test="function-available('saxon:evaluate')">
           <xsl:copy-of select="document($uri)//*[local-name()='output-character'] \
                                [saxon:evaluate($subset.profile)]"></xsl:copy-of>
          </xsl:when>
          <xsl:otherwise>
            <xsl:message terminate="yes">
Error: To process character-map subsets, you must use an XSLT engine
that supports the evaluate() XSLT extension function. Your XSLT engine
does not support it.
</xsl:message>
          </xsl:otherwise>
        </xsl:choose>
        </xsl:when>
        <xsl:otherwise>
          <!-- value of $use.subset is non-zero, so use the full map -->
        <xsl:copy-of \
select="document($uri)//*[local-name()='output-character']"></xsl:copy-of>
      </xsl:otherwise>
    </xsl:choose>
  </xsl:template>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Relative URI Functions

Introduction

These functions manipulate relative URI references.

The following assumptions must hold true:

1. All URIs are relative.
2. No URI contains the "`../`" sequence which would effectively move "up" the hierarchy.

If these assumptions do not hold, the results are unpredictable.

Name

count.uri.path.depth — Count the number of path components in a relative URI

Description

This function counts the number of path components in a relative URI.

```
<xsl:template name="count.uri.path.depth">
  <xsl:param name="filename" select="''"></xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="count" select="0"></xsl:param>

  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="contains($filename, '/')">
      <xsl:call-template name="count.uri.path.depth">
        <xsl:with-param name="filename" select="substring-after($filename, \
'/')"></xsl:with-param>
        <xsl:with-param name="count" select="$count + 1"></xsl:with-param>
      </xsl:call-template>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <xsl:value-of select="$count"></xsl:value-of>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>
```

Name

trim.common.uri.paths — Trim common leading path components from a relative URI

Description

This function trims common leading path components from a relative URI.

```
<xsl:template name="trim.common.uri.paths">
  <xsl:param name="uriA" select="''"></xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="uriB" select="''"></xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="return" select="'A'"></xsl:param>

  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="contains($uriA, '/') and contains($uriB, '/')                  \
  and substring-before($uriA, '/') = substring-before($uriB, '/')">
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
      <xsl:call-template name="trim.common.uri.paths">
        <xsl:with-param name="uriA" select="substring-after($uriA, \
'/')"></xsl:with-param>
        <xsl:with-param name="uriB" select="substring-after($uriB, \
'/')"></xsl:with-param>
        <xsl:with-param name="return" select="$return"></xsl:with-param>
      </xsl:call-template>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <xsl:choose>
        <xsl:when test="$return = 'A'">
          <xsl:value-of select="$uriA"></xsl:value-of>
        </xsl:when>
        <xsl:otherwise>
          <xsl:value-of select="$uriB"></xsl:value-of>
        </xsl:otherwise>
      </xsl:choose>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Part IX. Common Template Reference

Introduction

This is technical reference documentation for the DocBook XSL Stylesheets; it documents (some of) the parameters, templates, and other elements of the stylesheets.

This is not intended to be “user” documentation. It is provided for developers writing customization layers for the stylesheets, and for anyone who's interested in “how it works”.

Although I am trying to be thorough, this documentation is known to be incomplete. Don't forget to read the source, too :-)

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Templates

Name

is.component — Tests if a given node is a component-level element

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="is.component">
<xsl:param name="node" select="."/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

This template returns '1' if the specified node is a component (Chapter, Appendix, etc.), and '0' otherwise.

Parameters

node
: The node which is to be tested.

Returns

This template returns '1' if the specified node is a component (Chapter, Appendix, etc.), and '0' otherwise.

Name

is.section — Tests if a given node is a section-level element

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="is.section">
<xsl:param name="node" select="."/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

This template returns '1' if the specified node is a section (Section, Sect1, Sect2, etc.), and '0' otherwise.

Parameters

node
: The node which is to be tested.

Returns

This template returns '1' if the specified node is a section (Section, Sect1, Sect2, etc.), and '0' otherwise.

Name

section.level — Returns the hierarchical level of a section

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="section.level">
<xsl:param name="node" select="."/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

This template calculates the hierarchical level of a section. The element `sect1` is at level 1, `sect2` is at level 2, etc.

Recursive sections are calculated down to the fifth level.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Parameters

node
: The section node for which the level should be calculated. Defaults to the context node.

Returns

The section level, “1”, “2”, etc.

Name

qanda.section.level — Returns the hierarchical level of a QandASet

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="qanda.section.level"/>
```

This template calculates the hierarchical level of a QandASet.

Returns

The level, “1”, “2”, etc.

Name

select.mediaobject — Selects and processes an appropriate media object from a list

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="select.mediaobject">
<xsl:param name="olist" select="imageobject|imageobjectco                    \
|videoobject|audioobject|textobject"/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

This template takes a list of media objects (usually the children of a mediaobject or inlinemediaobject) and processes the "right" object.

This template relies on a template named "select.mediaobject.index" to determine which object in the list is appropriate.

If no acceptable object is located, nothing happens.

Parameters

olist
: The node list of potential objects to examine.

Returns

Calls <xsl:apply-templates> on the selected object.

Name

select.mediaobject.index — Selects the position of the appropriate media object from a list

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="select.mediaobject.index">
<xsl:param name="olist" select="imageobject|imageobjectco                    \
|videoobject|audioobject|textobject"/>
<xsl:param name="count">1</xsl:param>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

This template takes a list of media objects (usually the children of a mediaobject or inlinemediaobject) and determines the "right" object. It returns the position of that object to be used by the calling template.

If the parameter `use.role.for.mediaobject` is nonzero, then it first checks for an object with a role attribute of the appropriate value. It takes the first of those. Otherwise, it takes the first acceptable object through a recursive pass through the list.

This template relies on a template named "is.acceptable.mediaobject" to determine if a given object is an acceptable graphic. The semantics of media objects is that the first acceptable graphic should be used.

If no acceptable object is located, no index is returned.

Parameters

olist
: The node list of potential objects to examine.

count
: The position in the list currently being considered by the recursive process.

Returns

Returns the position in the original list of the selected object.

Name

is.acceptable.mediaobject — Returns '1' if the specified media object is recognized

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="is.acceptable.mediaobject">
<xsl:param name="object"/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

This template examines a media object and returns '1' if the object is recognized as a graphic.

Parameters

object
: The media object to consider.

Returns

0 or 1

Name

check.id.unique — Warn users about references to non-unique IDs

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="check.id.unique">
<xsl:param name="linkend"/>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

If passed an ID in `linkend`, `check.id.unique` prints a warning message to the user if either the ID does not exist or the ID is not unique.

Name

check.idref.targets — Warn users about incorrectly typed references

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="check.idref.targets">
<xsl:param name="linkend"/>
<xsl:param name="element-list"/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

If passed an ID in `linkend`, `check.idref.targets` makes sure that the element pointed to by the link is one of the elements listed in `element-list` and warns the user otherwise.

Name

copyright.years — Print a set of years with collapsed ranges

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="copyright.years">
<xsl:param name="years"/>
<xsl:param name="print.ranges" select="1"/>
<xsl:param name="single.year.ranges" select="0"/>
<xsl:param name="firstyear" select="0"/>
<xsl:param name="nextyear" select="0"/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

This template prints a list of year elements with consecutive years printed as a range. In other words:

```
<year>1992</year>
<year>1993</year>
<year>1994</year>
```

is printed “1992-1994”, whereas:

```
<year>1992</year>
<year>1994</year>
```

is printed “1992, 1994”.

This template assumes that all the year elements contain only decimal year numbers, that the elements are sorted in increasing numerical order, that there are no duplicates, and that all the years are expressed in full “century+year” (“1999” not “99”) notation.

Parameters

years
: The initial set of year elements.

print.ranges
: If non-zero, multi-year ranges are collapsed. If zero, all years are printed discretely.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

single.year.ranges
: If non-zero, two consecutive years will be printed as a range, otherwise, they will be printed discretely. In other words, a single year range is “1991-1992” but discretely it's “1991, 1992”.

Returns

This template returns the formatted list of years.

Name

find.path.params — Search in a table for the "best" match for the node

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="find.path.params">
<xsl:param name="node" select="."/>
<xsl:param name="table" select="''"/>
<xsl:param name="location">
    <xsl:call-template name="xpath.location">
      <xsl:with-param name="node" select="$node"/>
    </xsl:call-template>
  </xsl:param>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

This template searches in a table for the value that most-closely (in the typical best-match sense of XSLT) matches the current (element) node location.

Name

string.upper — Converts a string to all uppercase letters

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="string.upper">
<xsl:param name="string" select="''"/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

Given a string, this template does a language-aware conversion of that string to all uppercase letters, based on the values of the `lowercase.alpha` and `uppercase.alpha` gentext keys for the current locale. It affects only those characters found in the values of `lowercase.alpha` and `uppercase.alpha`. All other characters are left unchanged.

Parameters

string
: The string to convert to uppercase.

Name

string.lower — Converts a string to all lowercase letters

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="string.lower">
<xsl:param name="string" select="''"/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

Given a string, this template does a language-aware conversion of that string to all lowercase letters, based on the values of the `uppercase.alpha` and `lowercase.alpha` gentext keys for the current

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

locale. It affects only those characters found in the values of `uppercase.alpha` and `lowercase.alpha`. All other characters are left unchanged.

Parameters

string
: The string to convert to lowercase.

Name

select.choice.separator — Returns localized choice separator

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="select.choice.separator"/>
```

This template enables auto-generation of an appropriate localized "choice" separator (for example, "and" or "or") before the final item in an inline list (though it could also be useful for generating choice separators for non-inline lists).

It currently works by evaluating a processing instruction (PI) of the form <?dbchoice choice="foo"?> :

- if the value of the `choice` pseudo-attribute is "and" or "or", returns a localized "and" or "or"
- otherwise returns the literal value of the `choice` pseudo-attribute

The latter is provided only as a temporary workaround because the locale files do not currently have translations for the word *or*. So if you want to generate a a logical "or" separator in French (for example), you currently need to do this:

```
<?dbchoice choice="ou"?>
```

Warning

The `dbchoice` processing instruction is an unfortunate hack; support for it may disappear in the future (particularly if and when a more appropriate means for marking up "choice" lists becomes available in DocBook).

Name

evaluate.info.profile — Evaluates an info profile

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="evaluate.info.profile">
<xsl:param name="profile"/>
<xsl:param name="info"/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

This function evaluates an "info profile" matching the XPath expression given by the *`profile`* parameter. It relies on the XSLT `evaluate()` extension function.

The value of the *`profile`* parameter can include the literal string `$info`. If found in the value of the *`profile`* parameter, the literal string `$info` string is replaced with the value of the *`info`* parameter, which should be a set of *`*info`* nodes; the expression is then evaluated using the XSLT `evaluate()` extension function.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Parameters

profile
: A string representing an XPath expression

info
: A set of *info nodes

Returns

Returns a node (the result of evaluating the *profile* parameter)

Name

log.message — Logs/emits formatted notes and warnings

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="log.message">
<xsl:param name="level"/>
<xsl:param name="source"/>
<xsl:param name="message"/>
<xsl:param name="message-width">50</xsl:param>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

The `log.message` function is a utility function for logging/emitting formatted messages – that is, notes and warnings, along with a given log "level" and an identifier for the "source" that the message relates to.

Parameters

level
: Text to indicate the message level (`Note` or `Warning`)

source
: Text to identify source element the notification/warning relates to

message
: Message to lot/emit

message-width
: Expected maximum message width

Returns

Outputs a message (generally, to standard error).

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Part X. Refentry Metadata-Gathering Template Reference

Introduction

This is technical reference documentation for the "refentry metadata gathering" templates in the DocBook XSL Stylesheets.

This is not intended to be user documentation. It is provided for developers writing customization layers for the stylesheets.

Note

Currently, only the manpages stylesheets make use of these templates. They are, however, potentially useful elsewhere.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Templates

Name

get.refentry.metadata — Gathers metadata from a refentry and its ancestors

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="get.refentry.metadata">
<xsl:param name="refname"/>
<xsl:param name="info"/>
<xsl:param name="prefs"/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

Reference documentation for particular commands, functions, etc., is sometimes viewed in isolation from its greater "context". For example, users view Unix man pages as, well, individual pages, not as part of a "book" of some kind. Therefore, it is sometimes necessary to embed "context" information in output for each `refentry`.

However, one problem is that different users mark up that context information in different ways. Often (usually), the context information is not actually part of the content of the `refentry` itself, but instead part of the content of a parent or ancestor element to the the `refentry`. And even then, DocBook provides a variety of elements that users might potentially use to mark up the same kind of information. One user might use the `productnumber` element to mark up version information about a particular product, while another might use the `releaseinfo` element.

Taking all that in mind, the `get.refentry.metadata` function tries to gather metadata from a `refentry` element and its ancestor elements in an intelligent and user-configurable way. The basic mechanism used in the XPath expressions throughout this stylesheet is to select the relevant metadata from the *info element that is closest to the actual `refentry` – either on the `refentry` itself, or on its nearest ancestor.

Note

The `get.refentry.metadata` function is actually just sort of a "driver" function; it calls other functions that do the actual data collection, then returns the data as a set.

Parameters

refname
: The first `refname` in the refentry

info
: A set of info nodes (from a `refentry` element and its ancestors)

prefs
: A node containing user preferences (from global stylesheet parameters)

Returns

Returns a node set with the following elements. The descriptions are verbatim from the `man(7)` man page.

title
: the title of the man page (e.g., `MAN`)

section
: the section number the man page should be placed in (e.g., `7`)

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

date
: the date of the last revision

source
: the source of the command

manual
: the title of the manual (e.g., *Linux Programmer's Manual*)

Name

get.refentry.title — Gets title metadata for a refentry

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="get.refentry.title">
<xsl:param name="refname"/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

The `man(7)` man page describes this as "the title of the man page (e.g., `MAN`). This differs from `refname` in that, if the `refentry` has a `refentrytitle`, we use that as the `title`; otherwise, we just use first `refname` in the first `refnamediv` in the source.

Parameters

refname
: The first `refname` in the refentry

Returns

Returns a `title` node.

Name

get.refentry.section — Gets section metadata for a refentry

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="get.refentry.section">
<xsl:param name="refname"/>
<xsl:param name="quiet" select="0"/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

The `man(7)` man page describes this as "the section number the man page should be placed in (e.g., `7`)". If we do not find a `manvolnum` specified in the source, and we find that the `refentry` is for a function, we use the section number `3` ["Library calls (functions within program libraries)"]; otherwise, we default to using `1` ["Executable programs or shell commands"].

Parameters

refname
: The first `refname` in the refentry

quiet
: If non-zero, no "missing" message is emitted

Returns

Returns a string representing a section number.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

get.refentry.date — Gets date metadata for a refentry

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="get.refentry.date">
<xsl:param name="refname"/>
<xsl:param name="info"/>
<xsl:param name="prefs"/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

The `man(7)` man page describes this as "the date of the last revision". If we cannot find a date in the source, we generate one.

Parameters

refname
: The first `refname` in the refentry

info
: A set of info nodes (from a `refentry` element and its ancestors)

prefs
: A node containing users preferences (from global stylesheet parameters)

Returns

Returns a `date` node.

Name

get.refentry.source — Gets source metadata for a refentry

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="get.refentry.source">
<xsl:param name="refname"/>
<xsl:param name="info"/>
<xsl:param name="prefs"/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

The `man(7)` man page describes this as "the source of the command", and provides the following examples:

- For binaries, use something like: GNU, NET-2, SLS Distribution, MCC Distribution.
- For system calls, use the version of the kernel that you are currently looking at: Linux 0.99.11.
- For library calls, use the source of the function: GNU, BSD 4.3, Linux DLL 4.4.1.

The `solbook(5)` man page describes something very much like what `man(7)` calls "source", except that `solbook(5)` names it "software" and describes it like this:

> This is the name of the software product that the topic discussed on the reference page belongs to. For example UNIX commands are part of the `SunOS x.x` release.

In practice, there are many pages that simply have a version number in the "source" field. So, it looks like what we have is a two-part field, *`Name Version`*, where:

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name
: product name (e.g., BSD) or org. name (e.g., GNU)

Version
: version name

Each part is optional. If the *Name* is a product name, then the *Version* is probably the version of the product. Or there may be no *Name*, in which case, if there is a *Version*, it is probably the version of the item itself, not the product it is part of. Or, if the *Name* is an organization name, then there probably will be no *Version*.

Parameters

refname
: The first `refname` in the refentry

info
: A set of info nodes (from a `refentry` element and its ancestors)

prefs
: A node containing users preferences (from global stylesheet parameters)

Returns

Returns a `source` node.

Name

get.refentry.source.name — Gets source-name metadata for a refentry

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="get.refentry.source.name">
<xsl:param name="refname"/>
<xsl:param name="info"/>
<xsl:param name="prefs"/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

A "source name" is one part of a (potentially) two-part *Name* *Version* source field. For more details, see the documentation for the `get.refentry.source` template.

Parameters

refname
: The first `refname` in the refentry

info
: A set of info nodes (from a `refentry` element and its ancestors)

prefs
: A node containing users preferences (from global stylesheet parameters)

Returns

Depending on what output method is used for the current stylesheet, either returns a text node or possibly an element node, containing "source name" data.

Name

get.refentry.version — Gets version metadata for a refentry

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="get.refentry.version">
<xsl:param name="refname"/>
<xsl:param name="info"/>
<xsl:param name="prefs"/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

A "version" is one part of a (potentially) two-part *`Name Version`* source field. For more details, see the documentation for the `get.refentry.source` template.

Parameters

refname
: The first `refname` in the refentry

info
: A set of info nodes (from a `refentry` element and its ancestors)

prefs
: A node containing users preferences (from global stylesheet parameters)

Returns

Depending on what output method is used for the current stylesheet, either returns a text node or possibly an element node, containing "version" data.

Name

get.refentry.manual — Gets source metadata for a refentry

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="get.refentry.manual">
<xsl:param name="refname"/>
<xsl:param name="info"/>
<xsl:param name="prefs"/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

The `man(7)` man page describes this as "the title of the manual (e.g., *Linux Programmer's Manual*)". Here are some examples from existing man pages:

- *dpkg utilities* (**dpkg-name**)
- *User Contributed Perl Documentation* (**GET**)
- *GNU Development Tools* (**ld**)
- *Emperor Norton Utilities* (**ddate**)
- *Debian GNU/Linux manual* (**faked**)
- *GIMP Manual Pages* (**gimp**)
- *KDOC Documentation System* (**qt2kdoc**)

The `solbook(5)` man page describes something very much like what `man(7)` calls "manual", except that `solbook(5)` names it "sectdesc" and describes it like this:

> This is the section title of the reference page; for example `User Commands`.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Parameters

refname
: The first `refname` in the refentry

info
: A set of info nodes (from a `refentry` element and its ancestors)

prefs
: A node containing users preferences (from global stylesheet parameters)

Returns

Returns a `manual` node.

Name

get.refentry.metadata.prefs — Gets user preferences for refentry metadata gathering

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="get.refentry.metadata.prefs"/>
```

The DocBook XSL stylesheets include several user-configurable global stylesheet parameters for controlling `refentry` metadata gathering. Those parameters are not read directly by the other `refentry` metadata-gathering functions. Instead, they are read only by the `get.refentry.metadata.prefs` function, which assembles them into a structure that is then passed to the other `refentry` metadata-gathering functions.

So the, `get.refentry.metadata.prefs` function is the only interface to collecting stylesheet parameters for controlling `refentry` metadata gathering.

Parameters

There are no local parameters for this function; however, it does rely on a number of global parameters.

Returns

Returns a `manual` node.

Name

set.refentry.metadata — Sets content of a refentry metadata item

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="set.refentry.metadata">
<xsl:param name="refname"/>
<xsl:param name="info"/>
<xsl:param name="contents"/>
<xsl:param name="context"/>
<xsl:param name="preferred"/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

The `set.refentry.metadata` function is called each time a suitable source element is found for a certain metadata field.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Parameters

refname
: The first `refname` in the refentry

info
: A single *info node that contains the selected source element.

contents
: A node containing the selected source element.

context
: A string describing the metadata context in which the `set.refentry.metadata` function was called: either "date", "source", "version", or "manual".

Returns

Returns formatted contents of a selected source element.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Part XI. Formatting Object Table Reference

Introduction

This is technical reference documentation for the DocBook XSL Stylesheets; it documents (some of) the parameters, templates, and other elements of the stylesheets.

This is not intended to be “user” documentation. It is provided for developers writing customization layers for the stylesheets, and for anyone who's interested in “how it works”.

Although I am trying to be thorough, this documentation is known to be incomplete. Don't forget to read the source, too :-)

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Templates

Name

calc.column.width — Calculate an XSL FO table column width specification from a CALS table column width specification.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="calc.column.width">
<xsl:param name="colwidth">1*</xsl:param>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

CALS expresses table column widths in the following basic forms:

- *99.99units*, a fixed length specifier.
- *99.99*, a fixed length specifier without any units.
- *99.99**, a relative length specifier.
- *99.99*+99.99units*, a combination of both.

The CALS units are points (pt), picas (pi), centimeters (cm), millimeters (mm), and inches (in). These are the same units as XSL, except that XSL abbreviates picas "pc" instead of "pi". If a length specifier has no units, the CALS default unit (pt) is assumed.

Relative length specifiers are represented in XSL with the proportional-column-width() function.

Here are some examples:

- "36pt" becomes "36pt"
- "3pi" becomes "3pc"
- "36" becomes "36pt"
- "3*" becomes "proportional-column-width(3)"
- "3*+2pi" becomes "proportional-column-width(3)+2pc"
- "1*+2" becomes "proportional-column-width(1)+2pt"

Parameters

colwidth
: The CALS column width specification.

Returns

The XSL column width specification.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Part XII. Template Stylesheet Reference

Introduction

This is technical reference documentation for the DocBook XSL Stylesheets; it documents (some of) the parameters, templates, and other elements of the stylesheets.

This is not intended to be “user” documentation. It is provided for developers writing customization layers for the stylesheets, and for anyone who's interested in “how it works”.

Although I am trying to be thorough, this documentation is known to be incomplete. Don't forget to read the source, too :-)

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Templates

Name

t:templates — Construct a stylesheet for the templates provided

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template match="t:templates"/>
```

The `t:templates` element is the root of a set of templates. This template creates an appropriate `xsl:stylesheet` for the templates.

If the `t:templates` element has a `base-stylesheet` attribute, an `xsl:import` statement is constructed for it.

Name

xsl:* — Copy xsl: elements straight through

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template match="xsl:*"/>
```

This template simply copies the xsl: elements straight through into the result tree.

Name

t:titlepage — Create the templates necessary to construct a title page

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template match="t:titlepage"/>
```

The `t:titlepage` element creates a set of templates for processing the titlepage for an element. The "root" of this template set is the template named "`wrapper.titlepage`". That is the template that should be called to generate the title page.

The `t:titlepage` element has three attributes:

element
: The name of the source document element for which these templates apply. In other words, to make a title page for the `article` element, set the `element` attribute to "`article`". This attribute is required.

wrapper
: The entire title page can be wrapped with an element. This attribute identifies that element.

class
: If the `class` attribute is set, a `class` attribute with this value will be added to the wrapper element that surrounds the entire title page.

Any other attributes are copied through literally to the wrapper element.

The content of a `t:titlepage` is one or more `t:titlepage-content`, `t:titlepage-separator`, and `t:titlepage-before` elements.

Each of these elements may be provided for the "recto" and "verso" sides of the title page.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

@* (in copy.literal.atts mode) — Copy t:titlepage attributes

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template match="@*" mode="copy.literal.atts"/>
```

This template copies all of the “other” attributes from a `t:titlepage` element onto the specified wrapper.

Name

t:titlepage-content — Create templates for the content of one side of a title page

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template match="t:titlepage-content"/>
```

The title page content, that is, the elements from the source document that are rendered on the title page, can be controlled independently for the recto and verso sides of the title page.

The `t:titlepage-content` element has two attributes:

side
: Identifies the side of the page to which this title page content applies. The `side` attribute is required and must be set to either “`recto`” or “`verso`”. In addition, you must specify exactly one `t:titlepage-content` for each side within each `t:titlepage`.

order
: Indicates how the order of the elements presented on the title page is determined. If the `order` is “`document`”, the elements are presented in document order. Otherwise (if the `order` is “`stylesheet`”), the elements are presented in the order that they appear in the template (and consequently in the stylesheet).

The content of a `t:titlepage-content` element is a list of element names. These names should be unqualified. They identify the elements in the source document that should appear on the title page.

Each element may have a single attribute: `predicate`. The value of this attribute is used as a predicate for the expression that matches the element on which it occurs.

In other words, to put only the first three authors on the recto-side of a title page, you could specify:

```
<t:titlepage-contents side="recto">
  <!-- other titlepage elements -->
  <author predicate="[count(previous-sibling::author)<2]"/>
  <!-- other titlepage elements -->
</t:titlepage-contents>
```

Usually, the elements so named are empty. But it is possible to make one level of selection within them. Suppose that you want to process `authorgroup` elements on the title page, but you want to select only proper authors, editors, or corporate authors, not collaborators or other credited authors.

In that case, you can put a `t:or` group inside the `authorgroup` element:

```
<t:titlepage-contents side="recto">
  <!-- other titlepage elements -->
  <authorgroup>
    <t:or>
      <author/>
```


XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

```
        <editor/>
        <corpauthor/>
      </t:or>
    </authorgroup>
    <!-- other titlepage elements -->
  </t:titlepage-contents>
```

This will have the effect of automatically generating a template for processing `authorgroup`s in the title page mode, selecting only the specified children. If you need more complex processing, you'll have to construct the templates by hand.

Name

t:titlepage-separator — Create templates for the separator

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template match="t:titlepage-separator"/>
```

The title page is separated from the content which follows it by the markup specified in the `t:titlepage-separator` element.

Name

t:titlepage-before — Create templates for what precedes a title page

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template match="t:titlepage-before"/>
```

Each side of the title page is preceded by the markup specified in the `t:titlepage-before` element for that side.

Name

* (in copy mode) — Copy elements

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template match="*" mode="copy"/>
```

This template simply copies the elements that it applies to straight through into the result tree.

Name

@* (in copy mode) — Copy attributes

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template match="@*" mode="copy"/>
```

This template simply copies the attributes that it applies to straight through into the result tree.

Name

* (in document.order mode) — Create rules to process titlepage elements in document order

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template match="*" mode="document.order"/>
```

This template is called to process all of the children of the `t:titlepage-content` element. It creates the hairy select expression necessary to process each of those elements in the title page.

Note that this template automatically handles the case where some DocBook elements, like title and subtitle, can occur both inside the *info elements where metadata is usually stored and outside.

It also automatically calculates the name for the *info container and handles elements that have historically had containers with different names.

Name

* (in document.order mode) — Create rules to process titlepage elements in stylesheet order

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template match="*" mode="document.order"/>
```

This template is called to process all of the children of the `t:titlepage-content` element. It creates the set of `xsl:apply-templates` elements necessary process each of those elements in the title page.

Note that this template automatically handles the case where some DocBook elements, like title and subtitle, can occur both inside the *info elements where metadata is usually stored and outside.

It also automatically calculates the name for the *info container and handles elements that have historically had containers with different names.

Name

* (in titlepage.specialrules mode) — Create templates for special rules

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template match="*" mode="titlepage.specialrules"/>
```

This template is called to process all of the descendants of the `t:titlepage-content` element that require special processing. At present, that's just `t:or` elements.

Name

* (in titlepage.subrules mode) — Create template for individual special rules

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template match="*" mode="titlepage.subrules"/>
```

This template is called to process the children of special template elements.

Name

t:or — Process the t:or special rule

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template match="t:or"/><xsl:template match="t:or" mode="titlepage.subrules"/>
```

This template processes t:or.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/

Name

t:or (in titlepage.subrules mode) — Process the t:or special rule in titlepage.subrules mode

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template match="t:or" mode="titlepage.subrules"/>
```

The titlepage.subrules mode doesn't apply to t:or, so just reprocess this node in the normal mode.

Name

element-or-list — Construct the "or-list" used in the select attribute for special rules.

Synopsis

```
<xsl:template name="element-or-list">
<xsl:param name="elements" select="*"/>
<xsl:param name="element.count" select="count($elements)"/>
<xsl:param name="count" select="1"/>
<xsl:param name="orlist"/>
  ...
</xsl:template>
```

Walk through each of the children of t:or, producing the text of the select attribute.

XML to PDF by RenderX XEP XSL-FO Formatter, visit us at http://www.renderx.com/